

**NEW ISSUE - BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY**

**Bond Ratings:**

**S&P: AAA**  
**Moody's: Aa1**  
**Fitch: AA+**

**See "RATINGS" herein**

*In the opinion of Bond Counsel, assuming compliance by the District with certain covenants, under existing statutes, regulations and judicial decisions, the interest on the Series 2014A Bonds will be excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes of the holders thereof and will not be an item of tax preference for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax imposed on individuals and corporations. However, interest on the Series 2014A Bonds shall be taken into account in determining adjusted current earnings for purposes of computing the alternative minimum tax on corporations. In the further opinion of Bond Counsel, interest on the Series 2014A Bonds is exempt from District taxation, except for estate, inheritance and gift taxes. See "TAX MATTERS" herein for a description of certain other tax consequences to holders of the Series 2014A Bonds.*

**\$155,665,000**  
**DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA**  
**(Washington, D.C.)**  
**Income Tax Secured Revenue Refunding Bonds,**  
**Series 2014A**



**Dated: Date of delivery**

**Due: December 1, as shown on the inside cover page**

*This cover page contains certain information for quick reference only. It is not a summary of this Official Statement and investors must read the entire Official Statement to obtain the information essential to the making of an informed investment decision.*

The District of Columbia Income Tax Secured Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2014A (the "Series 2014A Bonds") are issued as Senior Bonds pursuant to (i) the Income Tax Secured Bond Authorization Act of 2008, effective October 22, 2008 (D.C. Law 17-254; D.C. Official Code §§ 47-340.26-36), as amended (the "Act"), and (ii) a Master Indenture of Trust between the District of Columbia (the "District") and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., as trustee (the "Trustee"), dated as of March 1, 2009, as amended (the "Master Indenture"), and as supplemented by an Eighteenth Supplemental Indenture of Trust between the District and the Trustee dated as of September 1, 2014 (the "Eighteenth Supplemental Indenture," and, together with the Master Indenture, the "Indenture"), executed pursuant to the Act.

The proceeds of the Series 2014A Bonds will be used, together with other funds of the District, to provide sufficient funds to: (i) currently refund the District's outstanding Certificates of Participation, Series 2003 (the "2003 Refunded Certificates"); (ii) advance refund the District's outstanding Certificates of Participation, Series 2006 (the "2006 Refunded Certificates" and, together with the 2003 Refunded Certificates, the "Refunded Certificates"); and (iii) pay the costs and expenses of issuing and delivering the Series 2014A Bonds.

The Series 2014A Bonds, the Outstanding Bonds and any Additional Bonds issued under the terms of the Indenture (collectively, the "Bonds"), will be payable from and secured by a security interest in and a statutory lien on the Trust Estate, consisting primarily of the Revenues (including all Available Tax Revenues received or to be received by the Collection Agent (as agent for the Trustee), the Trustee or the District). Available Tax Revenues means the sum of Available Business Franchise Tax Revenues and Available Income Tax Revenues generated and to be generated in any Fiscal Year of the District.

The Series 2014A Bonds will be issued only as fully registered bonds registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York, which will act as securities depository. Individual purchases will be made in book entry-only form.

The Series 2014A Bonds are issuable as registered bonds without coupons in denominations of \$5,000 and integral multiples thereof. Interest on the Series 2014A Bonds will accrue from their date of delivery at the rates set forth on the inside cover page hereof, payable semi-annually on June 1 and December 1, commencing December 1, 2014, until their final payment or maturity. Interest shall be computed on the basis of a three hundred sixty (360) day year consisting of twelve (12) months of thirty (30) days each.

**Pursuant to the Act, the Bonds are special obligations of the District payable solely from the Trust Estate pledged under the Indenture. The Bonds are without recourse to the District, and are not a pledge of, and do not involve, the faith and credit or the taxing power of the District (other than the pledge of the Revenues made by the Indenture and the Act), do not constitute a debt of the District, and do not constitute lending of the public credit for private undertakings as prohibited by District law.**

---

*The Series 2014A Bonds are offered when, as and if issued by the District, subject to receipt of the approving legal opinion of Bryant Miller Olive P.C., Washington, D.C., Bond Counsel to the District. The Office of the Attorney General for the District of Columbia will deliver an opinion as to certain legal matters pertaining to the District. Edwards Wildman Palmer LLP, Washington, D.C., Disclosure Counsel to the District, will deliver an opinion to the District and the Underwriters regarding certain matters. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriters by their co-counsel, Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Washington, D.C., and Lewis and Munday, A Professional Corporation, Washington, D.C. It is anticipated that the Series 2014A Bonds will be available for delivery in book-entry form through the facilities of DTC in New York, New York on or about September 10, 2014.*

**Siebert Brandford Shank & Co., L.L.C.**

**Rice Financial Products Company**

**J.P. Morgan**

**Wells Fargo Securities**

August 19, 2014

**MATURITY DATES, PRINCIPAL AMOUNTS, INTEREST RATES, PRICES, YIELDS AND CUSIPS<sup>†</sup>****\$155,665,000 Income Tax Secured Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2014A**

<b><u>Year (December 1)</u></b>	<b><u>Principal Amount</u></b>	<b><u>Interest Rate</u></b>	<b><u>Price</u></b>	<b><u>Yield</u></b>	<b><u>CUSIP<sup>†</sup></u></b>
2014	\$17,465,000	1.000%	100.203%	0.095%	25477GNA9
2016	16,010,000	5.000	110.320	0.340	25477GNB7
2017	6,165,000	5.000	113.928	0.630	25477GNC5
2018	17,150,000	5.000	116.867	0.920	25477GND3
2019	7,360,000	5.000	119.131	1.210	25477GNE1
2020	6,505,000	5.000	120.526	1.530	25477GNF8
2021	18,735,000	5.000	121.737	1.780	25477GNG6
2022	19,695,000	5.000	122.475	2.020	25477GNH4
2023	14,755,000	5.000	123.541	2.170	25477GNJ0
2024	15,515,000	5.000	124.679	2.280	25477GNK7
2025	16,310,000	5.000	125.447	2.400	25477GNL5

---

<sup>†</sup> Copyright 2014, American Bankers Association. CUSIP data is provided by Standard & Poor's CUSIP Service Bureau, a division of The McGraw Hill Companies Inc. The CUSIP numbers listed above are being provided solely for the convenience of bondholders only at the time of issuance of the Series 2014A Bonds and neither the District nor the Underwriters make any representation with respect to such CUSIP numbers nor undertake any responsibility for their accuracy now or at any time in the future. The CUSIP numbers are subject to being changed after the issuance of the Series 2014A Bonds as a result of various subsequent actions including, but not limited to, a refunding in whole or in part of the Series 2014A Bonds.

# DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA

**Vincent C. Gray**  
Mayor

## EXECUTIVE OFFICERS

Allen Y. Lew	City Administrator
Abigail Smith	Deputy Mayor for Education
M. Jeffrey Miller	Interim Deputy Mayor for Planning and Economic Development
Beatriz Otero	Deputy Mayor for Health and Human Services
Paul Quander	Deputy Mayor for Public Safety and Justice
Irvin B. Nathan	Attorney General
Jeffrey S. DeWitt	Chief Financial Officer
Jeffrey Barnette	Deputy Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer
Fitzroy A. Lee	Deputy Chief Financial Officer for Revenue Analysis
Stephen M. Cordi	Deputy Chief Financial Officer for Tax and Revenue
Bill Slack	Deputy Chief Financial Officer for Financial Operations and Systems
Gordon McDonald	Deputy Chief Financial Officer for Budget and Planning

## COUNCIL OF THE DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA

Phil Mendelson, Chairman

David A. Catania	At Large	Mary M. Cheh	Ward 3
David Grosso	At Large	Muriel Bowser	Ward 4
Vincent B. Orange, Sr.	At Large	Kenyan R. McDuffie	Ward 5
Anita Bonds	At Large	Tommy Wells	Ward 6
Jim Graham	Ward 1	Yvette M. Alexander	Ward 7
Jack Evans	Ward 2	Marion Barry, Jr.	Ward 8

### BOND COUNSEL

Bryant Miller Olive P.C.  
Washington, D.C.

### DISCLOSURE COUNSEL

Edwards Wildman Palmer LLP  
Washington, D.C.

### FINANCIAL ADVISORS

Public Resources Advisory Group, Inc.  
New York, New York

First Southwest Company  
Dallas, Texas

### INVESTOR RELATIONS

Jeffrey Barnette  
Deputy Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer  
Office of Finance and Treasury  
1101 Fourth Street, S.W., Suite 850  
Washington, D.C. 20024  
phone: (202) 727-6055  
fax: (202) 727-6963  
e-mail: [dcinvestorrelations@dc.gov](mailto:dcinvestorrelations@dc.gov)

No dealer, broker, salesperson or other person has been authorized by the District of Columbia (the "District") to give any information or to make representations, other than as contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the District. This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy, nor shall there be any sale of the Series 2014A Bonds by any person, in any jurisdiction in which it is unlawful for such person to make such offer, solicitation or sale.

The information set forth herein has been furnished by the District and includes information obtained from other sources, all of which are believed to be reliable. The information and expressions of opinion herein are subject to change without notice and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall, under any circumstances, create any implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the District since the date hereof. Such information and expressions of opinion are made for the purpose of providing information to prospective investors and are not to be used for any other purpose or relied on by any other party.

The order and placement of materials in this Official Statement, including the appendices, are not to be deemed a determination of relevance, materiality or importance, and this Official Statement, including the appendices, must be considered in its entirety. The captions and headings in this Official Statement are for convenience only and in no way define, limit or describe the scope or intent, or affect the meaning or construction, of any provisions or sections of this Official Statement. The offering of the Series 2014A Bonds is made only by means of this entire Official Statement.

The statements contained and incorporated by reference in this Official Statement and appendices hereto and in any other information provided by the District and other parties to the transactions described herein that are not purely historical are forward-looking statements. Such forward-looking statements can be identified, in some cases, by terminology such as "may," "will," "should," "expects," "intends," "plans," "anticipates," "believes," "estimates," "predicts," "potential," "illustrate," "example," and "continue," or the singular, plural, negative or other derivations of these or other comparable terms. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to such parties on the date hereof, and the District assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. The forward-looking statements included herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including, but not limited to, risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in various important factors. Accordingly, actual results may vary from the projections, forecasts and estimates contained in this Official Statement and such variations may be material, which could affect the ability of the District to fulfill some or all of the obligations under the Series 2014A Bonds.

The Underwriters (as defined herein) have reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, its responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Underwriters do not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

In connection with the offering of the Series 2014A Bonds, the Underwriters may overallocate or effect transactions which stabilize or maintain the market price of such Series 2014A Bonds at levels above those which might otherwise prevail in the open market. Such stabilization, if commenced, may be discontinued at any time.

**THESE SECURITIES HAVE NOT BEEN RECOMMENDED BY ANY FEDERAL OR STATE SECURITIES COMMISSION OR REGULATORY AUTHORITY. FURTHERMORE, THE FOREGOING AUTHORITIES HAVE NOT CONFIRMED THE ACCURACY OR DETERMINED THE ADEQUACY OF THIS DOCUMENT. ANY REPRESENTATION TO THE CONTRARY IS A CRIMINAL OFFENSE.**

**THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT IS BEING PROVIDED TO PROSPECTIVE PURCHASERS EITHER IN BOUND PRINTED FORM ("ORIGINAL BOUND FORMAT") OR IN ELECTRONIC FORMAT ON THE FOLLOWING WEBSITE: [HTTP://IPGWEB.WIX.COM/IPGWEBPOST-12608](http://IPGWEB.WIX.COM/IPGWEBPOST-12608). THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT MAY BE RELIED UPON ONLY IF IT IS IN ITS ORIGINAL BOUND FORMAT OR IF IT IS PRINTED IN FULL DIRECTLY FROM SUCH WEBSITE.**

## Summary

The following summary is subject in all respects to more complete information contained elsewhere in this Official Statement. Capitalized terms used in this Official Statement and not otherwise defined have the meanings given such terms in APPENDIX B.

<b>Issuer:</b>	District of Columbia
<b>Issue:</b>	\$155,665,000 Income Tax Secured Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2014A (the “Series 2014A Bonds”)
<b>Dated Date:</b>	Date of Delivery
<b>Denominations:</b>	\$5,000 and integral multiples thereof
<b>Interest:</b>	The Series 2014A Bonds will bear interest at the rates set forth on the inside cover page hereof, payable semi-annually on each June 1 and December 1, commencing December 1, 2014. Interest shall be computed on the basis of a three hundred sixty (360) day year consisting of twelve (12) months of thirty (30) days each.
<b>Redemption:</b>	The Series 2014A Bonds are not subject to redemption prior to maturity.
<b>Use of Proceeds:</b>	The proceeds of the Series 2014A Bonds will be used, together with other funds of the District, to provide sufficient funds to: (i) currently refund the District’s outstanding Certificates of Participation, Series 2003 (the “2003 Refunded Certificates”); (ii) advance refund the District’s outstanding Certificates of Participation, Series 2006 (the “2006 Refunded Certificates” and, together with the 2003 Refunded Certificates, the “Refunded Certificates”); and (iii) pay the costs and expenses of issuing and delivering the Series 2014A Bonds.
<b>Certain Key Definitions:</b>	<p>“Act” means the Income Tax Secured Bond Authorization Act of 2008, effective October 22, 2008 (D.C. Law 17-254; D.C. Official Code §§ 47-340.26-36), as amended.</p> <p>“Available Business Franchise Tax Revenues” means the revenues resulting from the imposition of the Business Franchise Tax, including penalty and interest charges.</p> <p>“Available Income Tax Revenues” means the revenues resulting from the imposition of the Income Tax, including penalty and interest charges.</p> <p>“Available Tax Revenues” means the sum of the Available Business Franchise Tax Revenues and the Available Income Tax Revenues generated and to be generated in any Fiscal Year of the District.</p> <p>“Available Withholding Tax Revenues” means, for each Fiscal Year, the amount of the withholding portion of the Available Income Tax Revenues, which amount is collected by the Collection Agent pursuant to the Collection Agreement.</p> <p>“Business Franchise Tax” means the franchise tax imposed by the District on corporations and unincorporated businesses pursuant to sections 47-1807.02, 47-1808.03 and 47-1817.06 of the D.C. Official Code.</p> <p>“Collection Account” means the account or accounts established and held by the Collection Agent pursuant to the Collection Agreement for the benefit of the Bondholders, into which the Collection Agent, on behalf of the Trustee, deposits the Available Tax Revenues in accordance with the provisions of the Act, and maintained as an Account within the Income Tax Secured Bond Fund pursuant to the Master Indenture.</p>

*“Collection Agent”* means the financial institution or institutions selected by the Chief Financial Officer as agent for the Trustee to receive Available Tax Revenues for deposit into the Collection Account of the District of Columbia Income Tax Secured Bond Fund in accordance with the Act and the Collection Agreement. The Collection Agent is Wells Fargo Bank, N.A.

*“Collection Agreement”* means the Collection Agreement by and between the Trustee and the Collection Agent relating to the Collection Account maintained by the Collection Agent on behalf of the Trustee pursuant to the Act.

*“Income Tax”* means the income tax imposed on individuals by the District pursuant to section 47-1806.03 of the D.C. Official Code.

*“Income Tax Secured Bond Fund”* means the fund established pursuant to section 47-340.27 of the D.C. Official Code and the Act, and maintained under the Indenture, which includes a Collection Account and a Revenue Account.

*“Revenues”* means the following, collectively, except as otherwise may be provided with respect to a Series of Bonds by the Supplemental Indenture authorizing such Series:

- (i) All Available Tax Revenues received by the Collection Agent, the Trustee or the District.
- (ii) With respect to any particular Bonds, the proceeds of any draw on or payment under any Credit Facility which is intended for the payment of such Bonds, but only for purposes of such payment and not for purposes of the additional Bonds test or other purposes of the Indenture.
- (iii) Any amounts received by the District pursuant to a Qualified Hedge after giving effect to any netting of amounts payable by the parties thereunder.
- (iv) Income and interest earned and gains realized in excess of losses suffered by any Fund (other than the Rebate Fund), Account (other than any Account in the Rebate Fund) or Subaccount held by the Trustee under the terms of the Indenture.
- (v) Any other revenues, fees, charges, surcharges, rents, proceeds or other income and receipts received by or on behalf of the District or by the Trustee, lawfully available for the purposes of the Indenture in accordance with the Act and deposited by or on behalf of the District or by the Trustee in any Fund (other than the Rebate Fund), Account (other than the Costs of Issuance Account and the Bond Proceeds Account) or Subaccount (other than any Subaccount in the Costs of Issuance Account and the Bond Proceeds Account) held by the Trustee under the terms of the Indenture, including any payments or collections received pursuant to enforcement actions, received from bankruptcy trustees or through the Bankruptcy Courts, received as a result of garnished wages, received as collections of tax levies, including the release of liens at real estate closings, received as a result of closures of estates, received as a result of the sales of businesses or involving business licenses, and other collection activities as shall be collected by the Chief Financial Officer and forwarded to the Collection Agent or deposited in the Income Tax Secured Bond Fund upon reconciliation of accounts.

“Trust Estate” means the following property:

- (i) All Revenues pledged pursuant to the Master Indenture.
- (ii) All right, title and interest of the District in and to Revenues, and all rights to receive the same by the Act including all of its right, title, and interest now owned or later acquired in and to the Available Tax Revenues, whether received or to be received, or held at the time, by a Collection Agent, custodian, or escrow agent or by District officials.
- (iii) Amounts on deposit from time to time, and any investment earnings thereon, in the Income Tax Secured Bond Fund, Funds (other than the Rebate Fund), Accounts (other than the Costs of Issuance Account and the Bond Proceeds Account) or Subaccounts (other than any Subaccount in the Costs of Issuance Account and the Bond Proceeds Account), held by the Trustee, and moneys and securities from time to time held by the Trustee under the terms of the Indenture, subject to the provisions of the Indenture permitting the application thereof for the purposes and on the terms and conditions set forth therein.
- (iv) All right, title and interest of the District owned or acquired in and to proceeds from the sale of Bonds issued under the Master Indenture and required to be deposited in the Capitalized Interest Account (but excluding the Bond Proceeds Account of the Bond Proceeds Fund and the Costs of Issuance Account and the Capital Project Fund held by the District) pursuant to the provisions of the Indenture (except as limited as provided in the Master Indenture) and all right, title, and interest in and to the investments held in such funds (except as limited as provided in the Master Indenture) pursuant to the provisions of the Indenture.
- (v) Any and all other property of any kind from time to time by delivery or by writing specifically conveyed, pledged, assigned or transferred, as and for additional security for the Bonds and the Obligations, by the District or by anyone on its behalf or with its written consent in favor of the Trustee, which is authorized by the Indenture to receive any and all such property at any and all times and to hold and apply the same subject to the terms of the Indenture.
- (vi) Any and all cash and non-cash proceeds, products, rents, and profits from any of the Trust Estate described in paragraphs (i) through (v) above, including, without limitation, those from the sale, exchange, transfer, collection, loss, damage, disposition, substitution or replacement of any of the foregoing.

**Security:**

The Indenture pledges the Trust Estate to the Trustee as security for the payment of the Bonds. The Trust Estate includes, among other things, all Revenues, consisting primarily of Available Income Tax Revenues and Available Business Franchise Tax Revenues received or to be received by the Collection Agent, the Trustee or the District.

The Act creates a statutory lien by providing that a “security interest created in respect of the bonds or pursuant to any related Financing Document shall be valid, binding, and perfected from the time the security interest is created, with or without physical delivery of any funds or any property and with or without any further action.” The Act further provides that “the holders of the bonds shall have a first lien on and pledge of the Available Tax Revenues superior to that of any other person, including holders of general obligation bonds or notes secured by the full faith and credit of the District.”

**Collection Agreement:** Pursuant to a collection contract between the Collection Agent and the District, the Collection Agent collects and receives the Available Tax Revenues. Pursuant to the Indenture and the Act, the Collection Agent entered into the Collection Agreement with the Trustee to act as the Trustee’s agent and fiduciary to deposit the Available Tax Revenues upon receipt into the Collection Account created under the Indenture for the benefit of bondholders, maintained by and held with the Collection Agent. Each business day, the Collection Agent transfers the Available Tax Revenues from the Collection Account to the Revenue Account held by the Trustee under the Indenture. The Trustee, as described below under “Retention Procedures,” retains such funds to pay debt service on the Bonds. Amounts not required to pay debt service are transferred to the District.

**Retention Procedures:** Each Business Day, all Available Tax Revenues received from the Collection Agent are deposited by the Trustee into the Revenue Account held under the Income Tax Secured Bond Fund. Amounts on deposit in the Revenue Account are withdrawn and transferred on a daily basis to the Accumulation Account established for the Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations, as follows, until the amount on deposit in all such accounts related to all Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations equals: (A) commencing on April 1 of each Fiscal Year and on each day thereafter in such month until 1/3 of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year are on deposit therein, 1/3 of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year, (B) commencing on May 1 of each Fiscal Year and on each day thereafter in such month until 2/3 of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year are on deposit therein, 2/3 of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year, and (C) commencing on June 1 of each Fiscal Year and on each day thereafter in such month and, if necessary, in each succeeding month until 100% of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year are on deposit in the Accumulation Account, 100% of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year (and to the extent necessary, until the amounts on deposit equal any debt service requirements relating to Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations for a prior Fiscal Year that have not been satisfied): (i) the aggregate of the Principal Installments of such Senior Bonds, and principal component of Senior Obligations, due during the next ensuing Fiscal Year, plus (ii) the aggregate interest due on such Senior Bonds and the interest component of Senior Obligations, due during the next ensuing Fiscal Year (for Adjustable Rate Bonds, based on the Assumed Interest Rate).

Unless otherwise set forth in a Supplemental Indenture, sixty (60) days prior to (A) June 1, moneys on deposit in the Accumulation Account shall be transferred from the Accumulation Account to the Interest Account, related to a series of Senior Bonds or Senior Obligations representing interest payable on such Senior Bonds or Senior Obligations on the June 1 date, and (B) December 1, moneys on deposit in the Accumulation Account shall be transferred from the Accumulation Account to the Principal Account and the Interest Account, allocated on a pro rata basis to the Principal Account and the Interest Account, related to a series of Senior Bonds or Senior Obligations representing principal and interest payable on such Senior Bonds or Senior Obligations on the December 1 date.

In addition to the retention procedures set forth above, with respect to the Sinking Fund Installment of and interest due on the Series 2014A Bonds on December 1, 2014 and June 1, 2015 (the “Two Initial Payments”), pursuant to the Eighteenth Supplemental Indenture, commencing on September 15, 2014, the Trustee will transfer on a daily basis the amount available in the Revenue Account to the Series 2014A Accumulation Subaccount until the amount in the Series 2014A Accumulation Subaccount is sufficient for the Two Initial Payments. The Trustee will transfer from the Series 2014A Accumulation Subaccount to the Series 2014A Interest Subaccount and the Series 2014A Principal Subaccount, as applicable, amounts required for the Two Initial Payments as follows: (i) for the December 1, 2014 payment date, the later

of sixty (60) days prior to December 1, 2014 and such date as the amounts on deposit in the Series 2014A Accumulation Subaccount are sufficient to satisfy the debt service due and payable on December 1, 2014 and (ii) for the June 1, 2015 Interest Payment Date, sixty (60) days prior to June 1, 2015. Any amounts remaining in the Series 2014A Interest Subaccount, after June 1, 2015, derived from the transfers pursuant to this paragraph will remain therein and be applied in accordance with the Master Indenture. Any amounts remaining in the Series 2014A Principal Subaccount, after December 1, 2014, derived from the transfers pursuant to this paragraph will remain therein and be applied in accordance with the Master Indenture.

**Non-Impairment  
Covenant:**

The District pledges and covenants and agrees with the holders of the Bonds that, subject to the provisions of the Financing Documents, the District will not:

- (i) Limit or alter the revenues pledged to secure the Bonds or the basis on which such revenues are collected or allocated, in a manner that would generate Available Tax Revenues below the levels required to pay or secure the payment of the Bonds;
- (ii) Impair the contractual obligations of the District to fulfill the terms of any agreement made with the holders of the Bonds, provided, however, that the District may modify the District Income Tax rates or the income subject to those rates only if the modification, if in effect, would not have reduced the ratio of (A) District Income Tax generated by Available Withholding Tax Revenues for any 12 consecutive month period during the 15 month period immediately preceding the calculation to (B) the Maximum Annual Debt Service on the Senior Bonds then outstanding below 2.0;
- (iii) In any way impair the rights or remedies of the holders of the Bonds; and
- (iv) If Bonds are issued as Tax-Exempt Bonds, modify in any way the exemptions from taxation provided for in subsection (e) of § 47-340.29 of the D.C. Official Code and the Act until the Bonds, together with interest thereon, and all costs and expenses in connection with any suit, action or proceeding by or on behalf of the holders of the Bonds, are fully met and discharged.

Pursuant to the Act, the pledge and agreement of the District in the Indenture that is summarized above is included as part of the contract with the holders of the Bonds.

**Additional Bonds:**

The Indenture permits the issuance of Additional Bonds with a parity claim on the Trust Estate with the Outstanding Bonds and the Series 2014A Bonds upon the District's filing of a certificate of the Chief Financial Officer with the Trustee certifying (i) the Available Withholding Tax Revenues for a 12 consecutive month period of the immediately prior 15 months applicable to the Fiscal Year in which such Additional Bonds are to be issued or Senior Obligations are to be incurred, (ii) the Available Tax Revenues for the same 12 consecutive month period of the immediately prior 15 months that is used to calculate the Available Withholding Tax Revenues, and (iii) the Maximum Annual Debt Service that will be due on the Senior Bonds, including such Additional Bonds and the Senior Obligations, in any subsequent Fiscal Year, and showing that the amount in clause (i) at least equals 2 times the amount in clause (iii), and the amount in clause (ii) at least equals 3 times the amount in clause (iii).

In addition, Additional Bonds may only be issued upon receipt by the Trustee of a certificate of the Chief Financial Officer certifying that the issuance of such Additional Bonds does not create a violation of the Debt Ceiling Act (as hereinafter defined) or of Section 603(b) of the Home Rule Act (as hereinafter defined). Solely

for the purpose of determining whether Section 603(b) is violated, the Bonds, including the Additional Bonds to be issued, are treated as outstanding general obligation bonds.

The District may issue Subordinate Bonds or incur Subordinate Obligations pursuant to the Master Indenture at any time following receipt of written confirmation from each Rating Agency that its Rating on the Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations (to the extent that such obligations are rated) will not be lower than the Rating in effect prior to the issuance of the proposed Subordinate Bonds or Subordinate Obligations as a direct result of such issuance.

**Ratings:**

S&P, Moody's and Fitch have assigned ratings of "AAA," "Aa1" and "AA+," respectively, to the Series 2014A Bonds, and the outlook for each such rating is "stable." See "RATINGS" herein.

**TABLE OF CONTENTS  
FOR  
PART 1**

	<u>Page</u>
<b>INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE BONDS .....</b>	<b>2</b>
AUTHORIZATION .....	2
PURPOSE OF THE ISSUE .....	2
SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS .....	3
EXPECTED FINANCINGS .....	3
BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM.....	3
<b>THE SERIES 2014A BONDS .....</b>	<b>4</b>
GENERAL.....	4
REDEMPTION .....	4
<b>ANNUAL DEBT SERVICE SCHEDULE.....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>SECURITY AND SOURCES OF PAYMENT FOR THE BONDS .....</b>	<b>6</b>
LIMITED OBLIGATION.....	6
PLEGGED TAXES.....	6
<i>Income Tax</i> .....	7
<i>Business Franchise Tax</i> .....	9
<i>Historical and Projected Collections of Pledged Taxes</i> .....	10
<i>Historical Available Tax Revenues</i> .....	12
COLLECTION AGREEMENT.....	15
RETENTION PROCEDURES.....	17
NON-IMPAIRMENT COVENANT .....	18
ADDITIONAL BONDS.....	18
STATUTORY DEBT LIMITATIONS .....	19
<b>LITIGATION .....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>TAX MATTERS.....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>FINANCIAL ADVISORS.....</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>VERIFICATION OF MATHEMATICAL CALCULATIONS.....</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>LEGAL INVESTMENT IN DISTRICT OBLIGATIONS.....</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>LEGAL MATTERS .....</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>CONTINUING DISCLOSURE.....</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>RATINGS.....</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>UNDERWRITING .....</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>EXECUTION OF OFFICIAL STATEMENT .....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>APPENDIX A – FORM OF APPROVING OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL .....</b>	<b>A-1</b>
<b>APPENDIX B – SUMMARY OF CERTAIN DEFINITIONS AND PROVISIONS OF THE INDENTURE.....</b>	<b>B-1</b>
<b>APPENDIX C – BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM .....</b>	<b>C-1</b>
<b>APPENDIX D – FORM OF CONTINUING DISCLOSURE AGREEMENT .....</b>	<b>D-1</b>

**TABLE OF CONTENTS  
FOR PART 2**

	<b>PAGE</b>
<b>THE DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.....</b>	<b>1</b>
CREATION AND CHARTER.....	1
ORGANIZATION OF THE DISTRICT GOVERNMENT .....	1
CONGRESSIONAL AUTHORITY .....	5
THE AUTHORITY.....	6
FEDERAL FUNDING.....	6
<b>DISTRICT TAXES.....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>CERTAIN DISTRICT FINANCIAL INFORMATION .....</b>	<b>14</b>
FINANCIAL STATEMENTS.....	14
REVENUES AND EXPENDITURES .....	14
FISCAL YEAR 2014 AND 2015 BUDGETS.....	17
CAPITAL BUDGETING AND FINANCING .....	18
CASH RESERVES .....	20
<b>RETIREMENT PROGRAMS.....</b>	<b>24</b>
PENSION AND RETIREMENT PLANS NOT SPONSORED BY THE DISTRICT .....	24
PENSION AND RETIREMENT PLANS SPONSORED BY THE DISTRICT .....	24
FUNDED STATUS AND FUNDING PROGRESS .....	30
ANNUAL REQUIRED CONTRIBUTIONS.....	30
INVESTMENTS.....	31
RECENT CHANGES TO PENSION OBLIGATION REPORTING .....	31
OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS .....	32
INDEBTEDNESS .....	33
Summary of Statutory Debt Provisions.....	33
Long-Term Obligations.....	34
Other Capital Funding.....	41
Short-Term Obligations .....	41
<b>THE DISTRICT’S ECONOMIC RESOURCES.....</b>	<b>43</b>
Population .....	43
Employment and Industry .....	44

**Part 1  
of the  
Official Statement  
of the  
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA  
(Washington, D.C.)  
relating to**

**\$155,665,000  
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA  
(Washington, D.C.)  
Income Tax Secured Revenue Refunding Bonds,  
Series 2014A**

**INTRODUCTION**

The District of Columbia (the “District”) has prepared this Official Statement in connection with the issuance and sale of \$155,665,000 aggregate principal amount of its Income Tax Secured Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2014A (the “Series 2014A Bonds”).

This Official Statement consists of the cover page, the inside cover page, the Tables of Contents, this Part 1, including the Appendices to this Part 1 (all of the foregoing are referred to collectively as “Part 1”), and the attached Part 2 (“Part 2”). Both this Part 1 and Part 2 are dated as of the date set forth on the cover page. Both Part 1 and Part 2 should be read in their entirety. Part 1 of this Official Statement contains information relating principally to the Series 2014A Bonds. Part 2 of this Official Statement contains information relating principally to the government and economic resources of the District, and includes certain financial and other information supplementing the most recent general purpose financial statements of the District, which can be found in the District’s Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (“CAFR”) for the fiscal year (“Fiscal Year”) ended September 30, 2013. The following portion of the CAFR for Fiscal Year 2013 is incorporated herein by reference: the information under the heading “Financial Section,” from pages 21-160, inclusive (collectively, the “FY 2013 Financial Statements”). The District’s CAFR for Fiscal Year 2013 and the FY 2013 Financial Statements can be found on the District’s website at <http://cfo.dc.gov/node/771312> or by registering with and logging onto the website of Digital Assurance Certification, L.L.C. (“DAC”) at [www.dacbond.com](http://www.dacbond.com). DAC is the disclosure dissemination agent for the District. All information contained in Part 1 and Part 2 of this Official Statement pertaining to financial information or results for any year after Fiscal Year 2013 is preliminary, unaudited and subject to change.

References herein to the “District” refer to the District of Columbia as a municipal corporation and references to the “District of Columbia” refer to the District of Columbia as a geographical location.

***Investor Relations.*** Investor information, including the District’s CAFRs, may be requested in writing from the Treasurer, Office of Finance and Treasury, 1101 Fourth Street, S.W., Suite 850, Washington, D.C. 20024, by phone at (202) 727-6055, by e-mail at [dcinvestorrelations@dc.gov](mailto:dcinvestorrelations@dc.gov), or by fax at (202) 727-6963. As disclosure dissemination agent for the District, DAC has agreed to promptly file with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board’s Electronic Municipal Market Access (“EMMA”) system, upon receipt from the District, the District’s annual financial information and notices of events that are required by the Continuing Disclosure Agreement. See “CONTINUING DISCLOSURE.” Certain

financial information with respect to the District may be obtained through the website of DAC at [www.dacbond.com](http://www.dacbond.com). Any such information speaks strictly as of its date and the District has undertaken no obligation to update such information, other than in accordance with its continuing disclosure undertakings and applicable law.

## **GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE BONDS**

### **Authorization**

The Income Tax Secured Bond Authorization Act of 2008, effective October 22, 2008 (D.C. Law 17-254; D.C. Official Code §§ 47-340.26-36), as amended (the “Act”), authorizes the issuance of (i) the Series 2014A Bonds, (ii) additional bonds with a parity claim issued in satisfaction of the tests for additional bonds under the Indenture (“Additional Bonds”) and (iii) Subordinate Bonds (collectively, together with all Outstanding Bonds, the “Bonds”).

The issuance of the Series 2014A Bonds is authorized pursuant to (i) the Act and proceedings under the Act, including the “Fiscal Year 2014 Income Tax Secured Revenue Bonds and General Obligation Bond Issuance Approval Resolution of 2013, R20-321, effective November 5, 2013 (the “Approval Resolution”), and (ii) a Master Indenture of Trust between the District and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., as trustee (the “Trustee”), dated as of March 1, 2009, as amended (the “Master Indenture”), and as supplemented by an Eighteenth Supplemental Indenture of Trust between the District and the Trustee dated as of September 1, 2014 (the “Eighteenth Supplemental Indenture,” and, together with the Master Indenture, the “Indenture”).

The Series 2014A Bonds are being issued as Senior Bonds under the Indenture.

The Act currently authorizes the issuance of Bonds in an amount not to exceed \$9,180,985,000. To date the District has issued approximately \$4.43 billion in Bonds (excluding refunding bonds issued to refinance outstanding Bonds), with approximately \$4.75 billion remaining under such authorization. Upon the issuance of the Series 2014A Bonds, \$4.59 billion of such authorization under the Act will remain available. The District has not issued any Subordinate Bonds under the Master Indenture.

The District has approximately \$4.3 billion of Senior Bonds outstanding, including \$258.3 million of variable-rate bonds. Upon the issuance of the Series 2014A Bonds, the District will have approximately \$4.47 billion of Senior Bonds outstanding.

### **Purpose of the Issue**

The proceeds of the Series 2014A Bonds will be used, together with other funds of the District, to provide sufficient funds to: (i) currently refund the District’s outstanding Certificates of Participation, Series 2003 (the “2003 Refunded Certificates”); (ii) advance refund the District’s outstanding Certificates of Participation, Series 2006 (the “2006 Refunded Certificates” and, together with the 2003 Refunded Certificates, the “Refunded Certificates”); and (iii) pay the costs and expenses of issuing and delivering the Series 2014A Bonds.

## Sources and Uses of Funds

The sources and uses of the proceeds of the Series 2014A Bonds and other funds of the District are set forth below:

### Sources:

Principal Amount of Series 2014A Bonds	\$155,665,000
Original Issue Premium	28,134,001
Release of certain moneys held with respect to the Refunded Certificates	<u>22,798,496</u>

### Total Sources:

**\$206,597,497**

### Uses:

Deposit to Series 2014A – 2003 Refunded Certificates Redemption Fund <sup>(1)</sup>	\$42,359,817
Deposit to Series 2014A – 2006 Refunded Certificates Redemption Fund <sup>(2)</sup>	163,032,221
Underwriters' Discount	604,734
Deposit to Costs of Issuance Subaccount <sup>(3)</sup>	<u>600,725</u>

### Total Uses:

**\$206,597,497**

Note: Figures rounded to the nearest whole dollar.

- (1) The proceeds of the Series 2014A Bonds deposited in the Series 2014A – 2003 Refunded Certificates Redemption Fund will be used to redeem the 2003 Refunded Certificates on September 11, 2014.
- (2) The proceeds of the Series 2014A Bonds deposited in the Series 2014A – 2006 Refunded Certificates Redemption Fund, together with earnings thereon, will be used to redeem the 2006 Refunded Certificates on January 1, 2016 and to pay principal and interest payable on the 2006 Refunded Certificates on and prior to such date.
- (3) Includes, among other items, Trustee fees, legal fees (including Bond Counsel and Disclosure Counsel fees), Financial Advisory fees, rating agency fees and printing costs.

## Expected Financings

The District expects to issue approximately \$535 million of fixed rate general obligation bonds in the first quarter of Fiscal Year 2015 to pay for Capital Improvement Projects and to refinance the outstanding Multimodal General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2008A and Series 2008D currently held by Citibank, N.A.

The District also expects to issue up to \$600 million of Fiscal Year 2015 Tax Revenue Anticipation Notes in the first quarter of Fiscal Year 2015 to finance general governmental expenses of the District in anticipation of the collection or receipt of revenues for Fiscal Year 2015.

## Book-Entry-Only System

The Series 2014A Bonds will be issued as fully registered bonds, registered in the name of Cede & Co., as registered owner and nominee for The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”), New York, New York. Beneficial ownership interests in the Series 2014A Bonds will be available in book-entry-only form. Purchasers of beneficial ownership interests in the Series 2014A Bonds will not receive certificates representing their interests in the Series 2014A Bonds purchased. See “APPENDIX C, Book-Entry-Only System.”

Principal of and interest on the Series 2014A Bonds are payable, so long as the Series 2014A Bonds are in book-entry form, through a securities depository as described in APPENDIX C.

*None of the District, the Underwriters (as defined herein), or Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., the Trustee, has any responsibility or obligation to any Beneficial Owner (as defined in APPENDIX C) with*

*respect to (i) the accuracy of any records maintained by DTC or any DTC participant, (ii) the distribution by DTC or any DTC participant of any notice that is permitted or required to be given to the owners of the Series 2014A Bonds, (iii) the payment by DTC or any DTC participant of any amount received with respect to the Series 2014A Bonds, (iv) any consent given or other action taken by DTC or its nominee as the owner of the Series 2014A Bonds or (v) any other related matter.*

## **THE SERIES 2014A BONDS**

### **General**

The Series 2014A Bonds will be dated the date of their delivery, and bear interest at the rates set forth on the inside cover hereof, payable semiannually on June 1 and December 1, commencing December 1, 2014, until final payment or maturity. Interest shall be computed on the basis of a three hundred sixty (360) day year consisting of twelve (12) months of thirty (30) days each. The Series 2014A Bonds shall be issuable only as fully registered bonds in denominations of \$5,000 and multiples thereof.

Principal of and premium, if any, on the Series 2014A Bonds shall be payable to the registered owners upon the surrender of Series 2014A Bonds at the designated corporate trust office of the Trustee. Interest on the Series 2014A Bonds shall be payable by check or draft of the Trustee mailed to the respective Bondholders at their addresses as they appear on the Record Date on the registration books kept by the Trustee; provided, however, that in the case of a Securities Depository or Bondholder of \$1,000,000 or more in aggregate principal amount of Series 2014A Bonds, upon the written request of such Bondholder to the Trustee, received on or prior to a Record Date, specifying the account or accounts to which such payment shall be made, payment of interest when due shall be made by wire transfer of immediately available funds to the bank account number on file with the Registrar. Any such request shall remain in effect until revoked or revised by such Bondholder by an instrument in writing delivered to the Trustee. Principal, premium, if any, and interest on the Series 2014A Bonds shall be payable in lawful money of the United States of America.

If the date for payment of the principal of or interest on any of the Series 2014A Bonds shall be other than a Business Day, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is a Business Day, and payment on such day shall have the same force and effect as if made on the nominal date of payment.

### **Redemption**

The Series 2014A Bonds are not subject to redemption prior to maturity.

## ANNUAL DEBT SERVICE SCHEDULE

The table below sets forth the debt service requirements for the District's Income Tax Secured Revenue Bonds currently Outstanding under the Indenture, the debt service requirements for the Series 2014A Bonds, and total debt service on all of the foregoing, based on the assumptions set forth in the footnotes thereto.

### District of Columbia Income Tax Secured Revenue Bonds<sup>(1)</sup>

<u>Fiscal Year Ending (Sept. 30)</u>	<u>Debt Service on Currently Outstanding Bonds</u> <sup>(2)</sup>	<u>Debt Service on Currently Outstanding Bonds (Net of Federal Subsidies)</u> <sup>(2),(3)</sup>	<u>Debt Service on the Series 2014A Bonds</u>	<u>Total Debt Service on Bonds Outstanding Following Issuance of the Series 2014A Bonds (Net of Federal Subsidies)</u> <sup>(2),(3)</sup>
2014	\$ 362,418,352	\$ 346,173,727	\$ -	\$ 346,173,727
2015	329,854,271	313,627,151	22,514,046	336,141,197
2016	292,788,785	275,283,800	6,910,000	282,193,800
2017	303,743,683	286,238,699	22,519,750	308,758,449
2018	347,708,860	330,203,876	12,120,375	342,324,251
2019	356,451,444	339,113,438	22,522,500	361,635,938
2020	332,019,676	315,027,254	12,119,750	327,147,004
2021	338,093,632	321,470,360	10,918,125	332,388,485
2022	344,619,103	328,387,929	22,517,125	350,905,054
2023	376,862,006	361,173,137	22,516,375	383,689,512
2024	379,964,908	365,013,922	16,715,125	381,729,047
2025	381,073,656	366,948,501	16,718,375	383,666,876
2026	380,116,542	366,894,341	16,717,750	383,612,091
2027	372,558,137	361,128,795	-	361,128,795
2028	334,765,379	325,176,308	-	325,176,308
2029	326,874,468	318,348,055	-	318,348,055
2030	296,381,231	288,954,231	-	288,954,231
2031	261,267,294	254,980,431	-	254,980,431
2032	251,589,960	246,488,021	-	246,488,021
2033	207,666,945	203,793,734	-	203,793,734
2034	206,231,481	203,632,511	-	203,632,511
2035	197,738,879	196,461,327	-	196,461,327
2036	122,086,469	121,784,036	-	121,784,036
2037	90,265,450	90,265,450	-	90,265,450
2038	<u>52,896,525</u>	<u>52,896,525</u>	-	<u>52,896,525</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$7,246,037,136</b>	<b>\$6,979,465,560</b>	<b>\$204,809,296</b>	<b>\$7,184,274,857</b>

(1) Amounts may not total due to rounding.

(2) Debt service amounts include: (a) sinking fund installments for the District's Income Tax Secured Revenue Bonds, 2010D (Federally Taxable – Qualified School Construction Bonds – Direct Pay to Issuer) (the "Series 2010D Bonds"); (b) the debt service requirements of the District's outstanding Income Tax Secured Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2011B (Adjusted SIFMA Rate) (the "Series 2011B Bonds") and the District's Income Tax Secured Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2011E (Adjusted SIFMA Rate) (the "2011E Bonds" and, together with the Series 2011B Bonds, the "Series 2011 SIFMA Bonds") as if such Series 2011 SIFMA Bonds were amortized in accordance with the principal amortization schedules established in the Thirteenth Supplemental Indenture, at an assumed interest rate of 3%; and (c) the debt service requirements of the District's outstanding Income Tax Secured Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2013A (Adjusted SIFMA Rate) (the "Series 2013 SIFMA Bonds") as if such Series 2013 SIFMA Bonds were amortized in accordance with the principal amortization schedule established in the Seventeenth Supplemental Indenture, at an assumed interest rate of 3%.

(3) These debt service amounts are net of expected federal subsidies (including direct subsidy payments with respect to the District's Income Tax Secured Revenue Bonds, Series 2009E and Series 2010F, each issued as Build America Bonds (BABs) and its Income Tax Secured Revenue Bonds, Series 2010D, issued as Qualified School Construction Bonds (QSCBs)), anticipated to be paid to the District by the United States Treasury in connection with Bonds issued as BABs and QSCBs. The debt service for BABs and QSCBs reflect a federal government sequester reduction in the subsidy payments due to the District of 7.2% in Fiscal Year 2014 and an assumed federal government sequester reduction in the subsidy payments due to the District of 7.3% in Fiscal Year 2015.

## SECURITY AND SOURCES OF PAYMENT FOR THE BONDS

### Limited Obligation

Pursuant to the Act, the Bonds are special obligations of the District payable solely from the Trust Estate pledged under the Indenture.

**The Bonds are without recourse to the District, and are not a pledge of, and do not involve, the faith and credit or the taxing power of the District (other than the pledge of the Available Tax Revenues made by the Indenture and the Act), do not constitute a debt of the District, and do not constitute lending of the public credit for private undertakings as prohibited by District law.**

Pursuant to the Master Indenture, the District has pledged the Trust Estate to the Trustee for the payment and as security for the payment of the Principal Installments and Redemption Price of and interest on the Bonds and payments due under any Credit Facilities, Liquidity Facilities and/or Qualified Hedges to the extent provided by a Supplemental Indenture, in each case in accordance with their terms and the provisions of the Master Indenture and subject to the provisions of the Master Indenture permitting the application of the Trust Estate for the purposes and on the terms and conditions set forth in the Master Indenture, and in each case subject to the provisions regarding priority of payment as between Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations, and Subordinate Bonds and Subordinate Obligations.

The Act creates a statutory lien, by providing that a “security interest created in respect of the bonds or pursuant to any related Financing Document shall be valid, binding, and perfected from the time the security interest is created, with or without physical delivery of any funds or any property and with or without any further action.” The Act further provides that “the holders of the bonds shall have a first lien on and pledge of the Available Tax Revenues superior to that of any other person, including holders of general obligation bonds or notes secured by the full faith and credit of the District.” The Act and the Indenture pledge to the Trustee and grant a security interest in Available Tax Revenues “whether received or to be received, or held at the time, by the Collection Agent, the Trustee, a custodian, or escrow agent or by District officials.”

In the opinion of Bond Counsel, the Indenture creates the valid pledge that it purports to create.

Thus, the Trustee will have for the benefit of bondholders a security interest in and a statutory lien on the Available Tax Revenues received or to be received by the Collection Agent, the Trustee, or the District regardless of where the Available Tax Revenues are held at any moment in time.

The full faith and credit of the United States is not pledged for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds, nor is the United States responsible or liable for the payment thereof.

See also “—Non-Impairment Covenant” and “—Additional Bonds” below.

### Pledged Taxes

The District levies two major types of income taxes: the Income Tax (individual) and the Business Franchise Tax (collectively, the “Pledged Taxes”). The Pledged Taxes are the two sources of the Available Tax Revenues pledged as part of the Trust Estate.

## *Income Tax*

The District imposes the Income Tax on individuals domiciled within the District of Columbia at any time during a tax year or who maintain a place of abode within the District of Columbia for an aggregate of 183 days or more during a tax year.

The Income Tax rate is 4% on taxable income (less certain personal exemptions) less than \$10,000, 6% on taxable income from \$10,000 to \$40,000 and 8.5% on taxable income in excess of \$40,000. On January 1, 2012, the Income Tax Rate for taxable income in excess of \$350,000 became 8.95% until January 1, 2016. In July 2014, the Council of the District of Columbia (the “Council”) adopted legislation creating a new tax rate of 7% for taxable income between \$40,000 and \$60,000, while keeping the rate of 8.5% for income between 60,000 and \$350,000 and establishing a top marginal rate of 8.95% for taxable income in excess of \$350,000. Unless disapproved by Congress, the new tax rates will become effective January 1, 2015. See “DISTRICT TAXES” in Part 2 for a further description of these and other tax reductions.

Taxpayers may receive tax credits, including for taxes paid on income to another state or political subdivision and, in certain circumstances, for some amounts paid as real property taxes to the District.

Employers in the District of Columbia are required to withhold for each payroll period a portion of each District of Columbia resident employee’s income (for those employees who do not otherwise make estimated tax payments) and pay it directly to the District as an estimated prepayment of the Income Tax that such employee is expected to owe at the end of the year. Amounts withheld by employers are referred to in the following tables as “withholding” amounts; the Income Taxes paid directly by District resident employees to the District are referred to herein as “non-withholding.”

Federal government employment and contracting provide a foundation for the District’s economic base. Over the past year, the District’s private sector continued to add jobs and the number of private sector jobs as of June 2014 is about 50,000 greater than when the U.S. recession began in December 2007, with the largest gains occurring in professional services, health, hospitality and non-profit organizations. The current outlook is for gains in the private sector to continue which may offset reductions that occur in government employment.

The tables below illustrate the growth and decline of various District of Columbia employment sectors over time, the unemployment rate over time for the District of Columbia, the distribution of Income Tax collections by income level, and the sources of income of District of Columbia residents.

**Table 1. Employment in the District of Columbia By Industry**  
(Annual Average Data, 000s) <sup>(1), (2), (3), (4), (5)</sup>

<u>Calendar Year</u>	<u>2010</u>	<u>2011</u>	<u>2012</u>	<u>2013</u>	<u>2014</u> <sup>(5)</sup>
Federal Government	210.6	212.2	208.3	204.7	199.4
District Government	32.5	31.1	30.8	30.7	35.1
Public Transportation	3.8	3.8	4.0	4.3	4.3
Trade, Trans. & Utilities	27.3	27.4	28.1	29.0	31.3
Financial Activities	26.9	27.6	28.2	28.7	28.9
Professional & Business Services	147.7	150.4	154.1	155.6	159.2
Other private	259.5	269.9	277.3	288.0	300.0
<b>Total Service-Providing</b>	<b><u>700.4</u></b>	<b><u>713.0</u></b>	<b><u>720.2</u></b>	<b><u>730.4</u></b>	<b><u>738.9</u></b>
<b>Total Goods-Producing</b>	<b><u>11.7</u></b>	<b><u>13.2</u></b>	<b><u>14.6</u></b>	<b><u>14.8</u></b>	<b><u>15.1</u></b>
<b>Total Non-Farm</b>	<b><u>712.1</u></b>	<b><u>726.2</u></b>	<b><u>734.8</u></b>	<b><u>745.2</u></b>	<b><u>754.0</u></b>

<sup>(1)</sup> Reflects place of employment, not place of residence.

<sup>(2)</sup> Not seasonally adjusted. Data may not equal totals due to independent rounding. Industry classification is based on the North American Industry Classification System ("NAICS").

<sup>(3)</sup> Data includes all full-time and part-time employees who received pay for any part of the pay period that includes the 12th of the month.

<sup>(4)</sup> Proprietors, self-employed individuals, unpaid family and volunteer workers, military personnel, internationally stationed workers, and private household workers are excluded.

<sup>(5)</sup> 2014 data represents year-to-date seasonally adjusted data as of June 2014.

Source: U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics.

**Table 2. Unemployment Rates<sup>(1)</sup>**

<u>Calendar Year</u>	<u>District</u>	<u>Washington, PMSA</u>	<u>U.S.</u>
2009	9.7%	6.2%	9.3%
2010	10.0%	6.4%	9.6%
2011	10.1%	6.0%	8.9%
2012	8.9%	5.6%	8.1%
2013	8.3%	5.4%	7.4%
June 2013	8.9% <sup>(2)</sup>	6.0% <sup>(2)</sup>	7.8% <sup>(2)</sup>
June 2014	7.6% <sup>(3) (4)</sup>	5.3% <sup>(3) (4)</sup>	6.3% <sup>(3)</sup>

<sup>(1)</sup> Not seasonally adjusted. Annual rates are an average of monthly rates for the given year.

<sup>(2)</sup> Monthly rate for June 2013.

<sup>(3)</sup> Monthly rate for June 2014.

<sup>(4)</sup> Preliminary.

Source: U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics.

**Table 3. Personal Income Tax Filers and Liability by Income Level**  
(Fiscal Year 2013)

<u>Income Level</u>	<u>Number of Filers</u>	<u>Percentage of Total Filers</u>	<u>Percentage of Total Income Taxes</u>
\$100,001 and higher	58,357	16.4%	73.7%
\$75,001 - \$100,000	27,655	7.8	8.3
\$50,001- \$75,000	47,816	13.4	8.9
\$25,001- \$50,000	81,692	23.0	7.2
\$10,001 - \$25,000	70,266	19.8	1.8
\$10,000 and lower	<u>69,911</u>	<u>19.6</u>	<u>0.1</u>
	<b>355,697</b>	<b>100.0%</b>	<b>100.0%</b>

Source: District's Fiscal Year 2013 CAFR; Statistical Section, Exhibit S-2H.

**Table 4. Sources of Income of District Residents<sup>(1)</sup>**

<u>Source of Income</u>	<u>2009</u>	<u>2010</u>	<u>2011</u>	<u>2012</u>	<u>2013</u>
Net earnings	72.3%	72.4%	71.8%	71.9%	71.4%
Dividends, interest, and rents	15.9%	14.9%	15.8%	16.1%	16.4%
Transfer payments <sup>(2)</sup>	11.8%	12.7%	12.4%	12.0%	12.2%

(1) Each of the years listed in Table 4 is a calendar year.

(2) Transfer payments consist largely of government benefits received by individuals, including retirement and disability insurance benefits (e.g., workers' compensation), medical benefits (e.g., Medicare), income maintenance benefits (e.g., Supplemental Security Income benefits, family assistance payments and food stamps) and unemployment insurance compensation.

Source: U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis.

### ***Business Franchise Tax***

The Business Franchise Tax consists of two taxes: the corporate franchise tax and the unincorporated business franchise tax.

The District imposes a corporate franchise tax on income derived by corporations (including trusts, associations, and partnerships classified as corporations for purposes of federal income taxation) from sources within the District of Columbia at a rate of 9.975%, less certain tax credits. In July 2014, the Council adopted legislation that would lower the tax rate from 9.975% to 9.4%. Unless disapproved by Congress, the new tax rate will become effective January 1, 2015. See "DISTRICT TAXES" in Part 2 for a further description of these and other tax reductions.

For other nonexempt businesses having a gross income in excess of \$12,000, the District imposes an unincorporated business franchise tax on income from sources within the District of Columbia, less a \$5,000 annual deduction. Excluded businesses include those (i) that by law, customs, or ethics cannot be incorporated or can be incorporated only as a professional corporation under District law, (ii) in which more than 80% of the gross income is derived from the personal services actually rendered by the individuals or the members of the partnership or other entity in the conducting or the carrying on of a trade or a business and in which capital is not a material income-producing factor, (iii) that are engaged in by a blind person, and (iv) certain qualified high technology companies, which are instead taxed at a rate of 6%.

***Historical and Projected Collections of Pledged Taxes***

The following tables set forth information relating to the Pledged Taxes collected in Fiscal Years 2004 through 2013.

**Table 5. Pledged Taxes Collections<sup>(1)</sup>**  
 Fiscal Years 2004 - 2013  
 (cash basis of accounting, \$ in millions)

	<b>Pledged Taxes Collections<sup>(3)</sup></b>							<b>Total Taxes</b>
	<b>Individual Income Tax<sup>(4)</sup></b>				<b>Business Franchise</b>	<b>% of Total</b>		
	<b>Total Annual Personal Income<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Withholding</b>	<b>% of Total</b>	<b>Non-Withholding</b>	<b>% of Total</b>	<b>Business Franchise</b>	<b>% of Total</b>	
<b>2004</b>	\$28,954	\$876	68%	\$178	14%	\$242	19%	\$1,296
<b>2005</b>	31,266	919	63	229	16	317	22	1,465
<b>2006</b>	33,975	971	61	262	16	360	23	1,593
<b>2007</b>	36,476	975	56	338	20	417	24	1,730
<b>2008</b>	39,918	1,004	57	349	20	419	24	1,772
<b>2009</b>	40,403	995	67	141	10	342	23	1,478
<b>2010</b>	41,500	1,074	74	37	3	324	23	1,434
<b>2011</b>	45,272	1,221	71	127	7	372	22	1,720
<b>2012</b>	46,874	1,322	68	169	9	466	23	1,957
<b>2013</b>	48,053	1,391	66	250	12	453	22	2,094

(1) All data in this table is on a Fiscal Year basis. The differences between the cash basis of accounting and the modified accrual basis of accounting used for budgetary purposes explain the slight disparities between the "Total Taxes" column in this table and the "Actual" column in Table 7 - "Pledged Taxes Collections - Approved Budget to Actual." The reconciliation between such amounts for each Fiscal Year is set forth in the CAFR for the respective Fiscal Year.

(2) The source for the "Total Annual Personal Income" data contained in this column is the Federal Bureau of Economic Analysis.

(3) Amounts and percentages may not total due to rounding.

(4) Components of individual income tax are unaudited.

Source: District of Columbia Office of the Chief Financial Officer

**Table 6. Pledged Taxes Rates**  
Fiscal Years 2004 – 2014

	Individual Tax Rates						Business	
	\$0- \$10,000	\$10,001- \$20,000	\$20,001- \$30,000	\$30,001- \$40,000	\$40,000- \$350,000	\$350,000+	Corporation	Unincorporated
<b>2004</b>	5.00%	7.50%	7.50%	9.30%	9.30%	-	9.975%	9.975%
<b>2005</b>	5.00	7.50	7.50	9.00	9.00	-	9.975	9.975
<b>2006</b>	4.50	7.00	7.00	7.00	8.70	-	9.975	9.975
<b>2007</b>	4.00	6.00	6.00	6.00	8.50	-	9.975	9.975
<b>2008</b>	4.00	6.00	6.00	6.00	8.50	-	9.975	9.975
<b>2009</b>	4.00	6.00	6.00	6.00	8.50	-	9.975	9.975
<b>2010</b>	4.00	6.00	6.00	6.00	8.50	-	9.975	9.975
<b>2011</b>	4.00	6.00	6.00	6.00	8.50	-	9.975	9.975
<b>2012<sup>(1)</sup></b>	4.00	6.00	6.00	6.00	8.50	-	9.975	9.975
<b>2013</b>	4.00	6.00	6.00	6.00	8.50	8.95%	9.975	9.975
<b>2014<sup>(2)</sup></b>	4.00	6.00	6.00	6.00	8.50	8.95%	9.975	9.975

(1) As of January 1, 2012, taxable income in excess of \$350,000 became subject to an Income Tax rate of 8.95%.

(2) Legislation adopted by the Council in July 2014 creates a new tax bracket of \$40,000 to \$60,000 at an income tax rate of 7% and reduces the incorporated and unincorporated business tax rate to 9.4%. Unless disapproved by Congress, the new tax rates will become effective January 1, 2015.

Source: District of Columbia Office of the Chief Financial Officer

**Historical Available Tax Revenues**

The table below shows, for the two sources of Available Tax Revenues pledged, a comparison of actual and original approved budget amounts for the Fiscal Years 2004 through 2014.

**Table 7. Pledged Taxes Collections - Approved Budget to Actual**  
(modified accrual basis of accounting, \$000s)

<u>Fiscal Year</u>	<u>Approved Budget</u>	<u>Actual</u>	<u>Difference</u>	<u>% Difference</u>
2004	\$1,176,419	\$1,299,009	\$122,590	10.4%
2005	1,284,753	1,472,432	187,679	14.6
2006	1,391,345	1,591,483	200,138	14.4
2007	1,593,814	1,736,361	142,547	8.9
2008	1,740,816	1,755,894	15,078	0.9
2009	1,615,218	1,478,068	(137,150) <sup>(1)</sup>	-8.5
2010	1,463,177	1,434,131	(29,046)	-2.0
2011	1,568,883	1,656,282	87,399	5.6
2012	1,774,080	1,956,590	182,510	10.3
2013	2,129,369	2,094,179	(35,190)	-1.7
2014	2,118,631	1,594,738 <sup>(2)</sup>	N/A	N/A

<sup>(1)</sup> The variance for Fiscal Year 2009 is due primarily to the recession during calendar year 2008 (income tax receipts for Fiscal Year 2009 are based in part on income earned in calendar year 2008).

<sup>(2)</sup> Fiscal Year 2014 figure is based on actual tax collections for the first nine months of Fiscal Year 2014 (October 1 through June 30).

Source: District of Columbia Office of Tax and Revenue

The Home Rule Act requires the Chief Financial Officer (the “CFO”) to submit quarterly estimates of all revenues of the District to the Mayor and Council. On July 1, 2014, the CFO submitted an estimate for Fiscal Years 2014 through 2018 (the “June 2014 Revenue Estimate”). The June 2014 Revenue Estimate did not take into account various tax reductions approved by the Council in July 2014. See “DISTRICT TAXES” in Part 2 for a description of these tax reductions.

Based on the June 2014 Revenue Estimate, as adjusted for certain tax reductions approved by the District Council in July 2014, the District currently estimates that the following amounts of Available Tax Revenues will be collected by the Collection Agent in the Fiscal Years shown below:

**Table 8. Projected Available Tax Revenues**  
(\$000s)

<b>Available Tax Revenues</b>					
<b>Fiscal Year</b>	<b>Available Income Tax Revenues</b>			<b>Available Business Franchise Tax Revenues</b>	<b>Total Available Tax Revenues</b>
	<b>Withholding Only</b>	<b>Non-Withholding</b>	<b>Total</b>		
2014	\$1,446,740	\$274,478	\$1,721,218	\$474,852	\$2,196,070
2015	1,461,314	282,838	1,744,151	489,855	2,234,006
2016	1,510,545	296,970	1,807,515	502,630	2,310,145
2017	1,569,393	307,775	1,877,168	520,956	2,398,124
2018	1,633,763	318,311	1,952,074	538,682	2,490,756

Source: Estimates of Available Tax Revenues are based on the June 2014 Revenue Estimate adjusted for certain tax reductions approved by the Council in July 2014. Amounts may not total due to rounding.

## Table 9 Assumptions

The information included in Table 9 – “Projected Debt Service Coverage” below is based on a number of assumptions, which are set forth as follows:

- Debt service amounts in the columns titled “Debt Service for All Outstanding Bonds,” “Total Debt Service for All Outstanding Bonds and the Series 2014A Bonds,” and “Debt Service for Total Bonds in District CIP through 2018” include interest amounts that are net of expected BABs direct subsidy payments and QSCBs direct subsidy payments anticipated to be paid to the District by the United States Treasury in connection with the District’s Income Tax Secured Revenue Bonds, Series 2009E and the Income Tax Secured Revenue Bonds, Series 2010F, which were both issued as BABs, and the Series 2010D Bonds, which were issued as QSCBs. The debt service for BABs reflect a federal government sequester reduction in the subsidy payments due to the District of 7.2% in Fiscal Year 2014 and an assumed federal government sequester reduction in the subsidy payments due to the District of 7.3% in Fiscal Year 2015.
- Debt service amounts in the columns referenced in the preceding bullet: (a) sinking fund installments for the Series 2010D Bonds, and (b) estimated debt service on the SIFMA Bonds in accordance with the principal amortization schedules established in the supplemental indenture for each series of the SIFMA Bonds, at an assumed interest rate of 3%. See footnote 2 to the Annual Debt Service Schedule included herein for a description of the SIFMA Bonds.
- Debt service amounts in the column titled “Debt Service for Total Bonds in District CIP through 2018” were calculated using actual rates for outstanding fixed rate bonds, an assumed annual interest rate of 3% for all SIFMA bonds, and an assumed interest rate of 6% for all Future CIP Bonds (as hereinafter defined), which accounts for estimated debt service on the Bonds proposed to be issued to finance the District’s Capital Improvements Plan through Fiscal Year 2018 (as set forth in the Fiscal Year 2015 Budget (see “CERTAIN DISTRICT FINANCIAL INFORMATION – Fiscal Year 2015 Budget” and Footnote 1 to “Table 6: Fiscal Years 2015-2020 Capital Improvements Plan Funding Sources” in Part 2) (the “Future CIP Bonds”) (approximately \$1.1 billion in Fiscal Year 2015, \$854.2 million in Fiscal Year 2016, \$579.2 million in Fiscal Year 2017 and \$171.0 million in Fiscal Year 2018).
- Debt service coverage for maximum annual debt service (“MADS”) is based on the preceding assumptions, debt service in Fiscal Year 2025, the projected Available Withholding Tax Revenues in Fiscal Year 2025 and projected Total Available Tax Revenues in Fiscal Year 2025, which assume a 1% annual growth rate.

**Table 9. Projected Debt Service Coverage  
(\$000s)**

<b>Fiscal Year</b>	<b>Outstanding Bonds Debt Service Coverage<sup>(1)</sup></b>			<b>Series 2014A Bonds Debt Service Coverage<sup>(1)</sup></b>				<b>All Bonds Debt Service Coverage<sup>(1)</sup></b>		
	<b>Debt Service for All Outstanding Bonds</b>	<b>Withholding Only<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Total Available Tax Revenues<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Debt Service for Series 2014A Bonds</b>	<b>Total Debt Service for All Outstanding Bonds and Series 2014A Bonds</b>	<b>Withholding Only<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Total Available Tax Revenues<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Debt Service for Total Bonds in District CIP through 2018</b>	<b>Withholding Only<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Total Available Tax Revenues<sup>(3)</sup></b>
2014	\$346,174	4.18 x	6.34 x	\$ 0	\$346,174	4.18 x	6.34 x	\$346,174	4.18 x	6.34 x
2015	313,627	4.66 x	7.12 x	22,514	336,141	4.35 x	6.65 x	368,924	3.96 x	6.06 x
2016	275,284	5.49 x	8.39 x	6,910	282,194	5.35 x	8.19 x	392,208	3.85 x	5.89 x
2017	286,239	5.48 x	8.38 x	22,520	308,758	5.08 x	7.77 x	476,484	3.29 x	5.03 x
2018	330,204	4.95 x	7.54 x	12,120	342,324	4.77 x	7.28 x	542,528	3.01 x	4.59 x
MADS	366,949	4.77 x	7.28 x	22,523	383,690	4.57 x	6.96 x	591,970	2.96 x	4.51 x

<sup>(1)</sup> The debt service coverage ratios shown are calculated based on projected Available Income Tax Revenues that are net of amounts refunded. The pledge of Available Tax Revenues made by the Act and the Indenture are of all such tax revenues collected. Refunds are paid when due by the District from its General Fund.

<sup>(2)</sup> The debt service coverage ratio shown here is the ratio of Available Withholding Income Tax Revenues to debt service.

<sup>(3)</sup> See Table 8 above.

Source: The figures in this table are based on the data in Table 8 above and the June 2014 Revenue Estimate, adjusted for certain tax reductions approved by the Council in July 2014. Amounts may not total due to rounding.

## **Collection Agreement**

Pursuant to a collection contract between the Collection Agent and the District, the Collection Agent collects and receives Available Tax Revenues as well as certain other miscellaneous Revenues. Pursuant to the Indenture and the Act, the Collection Agent entered into the Income Tax and Business Franchise Tax Collection Agreement, dated as of March 1, 2009 (the “Collection Agreement”), with the Trustee to act as the Trustee’s fiduciary and agent to deposit the Available Tax Revenues plus certain other miscellaneous Revenues upon receipt into one or more Collection Accounts created under the Indenture and maintained by and held with the Collection Agent. Each business day, the Collection Agent transfers the Available Tax Revenues plus certain other miscellaneous Revenues from the Collection Account to the Revenue Account held by the Trustee under the Indenture. The Trustee, in accordance with the retention procedures described below, applies such funds to pay debt service on the Bonds. Amounts not required to pay debt service are transferred to the District.

The Collection Agent directly receives payment of Available Tax Revenues either by direct electronic transfer or receipt of uncashed checks resulting from (i) withholding of individual income taxes by employers (which constituted approximately 55% of Available Tax Revenues in Fiscal Year 2014, as shown in the table on the next page) and (ii) estimated quarterly tax payments made by individuals (approximately 21% of Fiscal Year 2014 Available Tax Revenues), corporations (approximately 12% of Fiscal Year 2014 Available Tax Revenues) and unincorporated businesses (approximately 6% of Fiscal Year 2014 Available Tax Revenues).

Available Tax Revenues received by the District as withholding amounts or accompanying annual income and franchise tax returns (in the form of uncashed checks) are transferred to the Collection Agent upon receipt for deposit in the Collection Account. Such payments constituted approximately 6% of Available Tax Revenues in Fiscal Year 2014. Any delinquent Available Tax Revenues collected by the District, as well as certain other miscellaneous Revenues, are required to be transferred to the Collection Agent as well.

Available Tax Revenues received in the form of cash were a very small portion of Available Tax Revenues in Fiscal Year 2014.

The following table shows the amount of Available Tax Revenues collected in the last three Fiscal Years by the District and the Collection Agent.

**Table 10. Pledged Taxes Collections, as received by Collection Agent and by District** <sup>(1)(2)</sup>  
 Fiscal Years 2012 – 2014  
 (cash basis of accounting, \$ in millions)

	<u>FY 2012</u>		<u>FY 2013</u>		<u>FY 2014</u> <sup>(3)</sup>	
	<u>Amount</u>	<u>% of total</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>% of total</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>% of total</u>
<b><u>Received Directly by the Collection Agent</u></b>						
Withholding (including ACH)	\$1,212	53.9%	\$ 1,307	53.0%	\$ 1,044	54.9%
Individual Estimated	395	17.6	511	20.7	394	20.7
Corporate Estimated	311	13.8	318	12.9	233	12.3
<u>Unincorporated Estimated</u>	<u>160</u>	<u>7.1</u>	<u>152</u>	<u>6.2</u>	<u>111</u>	<u>5.8</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$2,078</b>	<b>92.5</b>	<b>\$2,288</b>	<b>92.7</b>	<b>\$1,782</b>	<b>93.7</b>
<b><u>Received Initially by the District</u></b>						
Withholding (D.C. Resident Employees) <sup>(4)</sup>	\$ 46	2.0%	\$ 48	1.9%	\$ 38	2.0%
Withholding	47	2.1	49	2.0	34	1.8
Individual payments with returns	37	1.6	35	1.4	24	1.3
Corporate payments with returns	27	1.2	32	1.3	15	0.8
<u>Unincorporated payments with returns</u>	<u>12</u>	<u>0.5</u>	<u>15</u>	<u>0.6</u>	<u>8</u>	<u>0.4</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 169</b>	<b>7.5%</b>	<b>\$ 179</b>	<b>7.3%</b>	<b>\$ 120</b>	<b>6.3%</b>
<b>All payments</b>	<b>\$2,247</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>\$2,467</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>\$1,902</b>	<b>100%</b>
<b>Collections transferred to Trustee</b>	<b>\$2,255</b>		<b>\$2,551</b> <sup>(5)</sup>		<b>\$1,892</b> <sup>(3)</sup>	

<sup>(1)</sup> The differences between the “All Payments” row in Table 10 and the corresponding amounts in the “Actual” column in Table 7 - “Pledged Taxes Collections - Approved Budget to Actual,” and the “Total Taxes” column in Table 5 - “Pledged Taxes Collections,” are principally attributable to the netting out of refunded amounts in Table 5 and Table 7 and, to a lesser extent, to cash versus modified accrual accounting.

<sup>(2)</sup> Amounts may not total due to rounding.

<sup>(3)</sup> Actual collections through June 30, 2014 pending final audit adjustments for the Fiscal Year ending 2014 CAFR.

<sup>(4)</sup> Since the withholding liability for resident D.C. employees is owed to the District itself, the liability has been customarily paid via accounting transactions that do not require the use of cash, i.e., the District has not issued a disbursement check to itself. During Fiscal Year 2013, the District continued to manually transfer these withholding amounts to the Collection Agent.

<sup>(5)</sup> Fiscal Year 2013 cumulative transfers, as of September 30, 2013. The variance between total payments received and transfers to the trustee is as a result of a file transfer error at the bank. This problem was identified and rectified by OTR. The error resulted in a duplication of the distribution instructions to the trustee account and, consequently, an over-transfer of funds. OTR performed the necessary due diligence to ensure that the duplicate files did not result in payments being applied twice to taxpayer accounts, and that total cash received and recorded was not affected.

Source: District of Columbia Office of Tax and Revenue; Fiscal Year 2014 data is unaudited.

The District has an automated integrated tax system that identifies delinquent payments of District taxes as the result of tax returns filed with a balance due, audit adjustments or the Office of Tax and Revenue (“OTR”) discovery process. The system automatically generates bills to be sent to the delinquent taxpayer, which results in a voluntary payment by the taxpayer, payment obtained by OTR compliance activities, or payments arranged by third party vendors sent to the District by the taxpayer. Such payments are received as checks, money orders or electronic payments, with cash payments amounting to less than 0.4% of amounts received.

## **Retention Procedures**

Each Business Day, all Available Tax Revenues received from the Collection Agent are deposited by the Trustee into the Revenue Account held under the Income Tax Secured Bond Fund. Amounts on deposit in the Revenue Account are withdrawn and transferred on a daily basis to the Accumulation Account established for the Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations, as follows, until the amount on deposit in all such accounts related to all Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations equals: (A) commencing on April 1 of each Fiscal Year and on each day thereafter in such month until 1/3 of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year are on deposit therein, 1/3 of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year, (B) commencing on May 1 of each Fiscal Year and on each day thereafter in such month until 2/3 of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year are on deposit therein, 2/3 of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year, and (C) commencing on June 1 of each Fiscal Year and on each day thereafter in such month and, if necessary, in each succeeding month until 100% of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year are on deposit in the Accumulation Account, 100% of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year (and to the extent necessary, until the amounts on deposit equal any debt service requirements relating to Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations for a prior Fiscal Year that have not been satisfied): (i) the aggregate of the Principal Installments of such Senior Bonds, and principal component of Senior Obligations, due during the next ensuing Fiscal Year, plus (ii) the aggregate interest due on such Senior Bonds and the interest component of Senior Obligations, due during the next ensuing Fiscal Year (for Adjustable Rate Bonds, based on the Assumed Interest Rate).

Unless otherwise set forth in a Supplemental Indenture, sixty (60) days prior to (A) June 1, moneys on deposit in the Accumulation Account shall be transferred from the Accumulation Account to the Interest Account, related to a series of Senior Bonds or Senior Obligations representing interest payable on such Senior Bonds or Senior Obligations on the June 1 date, and (B) December 1, moneys on deposit in the Accumulation Account shall be transferred from the Accumulation Account to the Principal Account and the Interest Account, allocated on a pro rata basis to the Principal Account and the Interest Account, related to a series of Senior Bonds or Senior Obligations representing principal and interest payable on such Senior Bonds or Senior Obligations on the December 1 date.

In addition to the retention procedures set forth above, with respect to the Sinking Fund Installment of and interest due on the Series 2014A Bonds on December 1, 2014 and June 1, 2015 (the "Two Initial Payments"), pursuant to the Eighteenth Supplemental Indenture, commencing on September 15, 2014, the Trustee will transfer on a daily basis the amount available in the Revenue Account to the Series 2014A Accumulation Subaccount until the amount in the Series 2014A Accumulation Subaccount is sufficient for the Two Initial Payments. The Trustee will transfer from the Series 2014A Accumulation Subaccount to the Series 2014A Interest Subaccount and the Series 2014A Principal Subaccount, as applicable, amounts required for the Two Initial Payments as follows: (i) for the December 1, 2014 payment date, the later of sixty (60) days prior to December 1, 2014 and such date as the amounts on deposit in the Series 2014A Accumulation Subaccount are sufficient to satisfy the debt service due and payable on December 1, 2014 and (ii) for the June 1, 2015 Interest Payment Date, sixty (60) days prior to June 1, 2015. Any amounts remaining in the Series 2014A Interest Subaccount, after June 1, 2015, derived from the transfers pursuant to this paragraph will remain therein and be applied in accordance with the Master Indenture. Any amounts remaining in the Series 2014A Principal Subaccount, after December 1, 2014, derived from the transfers pursuant to this paragraph will remain therein and be applied in accordance with the Master Indenture.

## **Non-Impairment Covenant**

Pursuant to the Act and the Indenture, the District has pledged and covenanted and agreed with the holders of the Bonds that the District will not:

(i) limit or alter the revenues pledged to secure the Bonds or the basis on which such revenues are collected or allocated, in a manner that would generate Available Tax Revenues below the levels required to pay or secure the payment of the Bonds;

(ii) impair the contractual obligations of the District to fulfill the terms of any agreement made with the holders of the Bonds, provided, however, that the District may modify the District Income Tax rates or the income subject to those rates only if the modification, if in effect, would not have reduced the ratio of (A) District Income Tax generated by Available Withholding Tax Revenues for any 12 consecutive month period during the 15 month period immediately preceding the calculation to (B) the Maximum Annual Debt Service on the Senior Bonds then outstanding below 2.0;

(iii) in any way impair the rights or remedies of the holders of the Bonds; and

(iv) if Bonds are issued as Tax-Exempt Bonds, modify in any way the exemptions from taxation provided for in subsection (e) of § 47-340.29 of the D.C. Official Code and the Act until the Bonds, together with interest thereon, and all costs and expenses in connection with any suit, action or proceeding by or on behalf of the holders of the Bonds, are fully met and discharged.

Pursuant to the Act, the pledge and agreement of the District in the Indenture that is summarized above is included as part of the contract with the holders of the Bonds.

## **Additional Bonds**

The District may issue additional Bonds in the future. The Indenture permits the issuance of additional Senior Bonds with a parity claim with the Series 2014A Bonds and the Outstanding Bonds on the Trust Estate upon the District's filing of a certificate of the Chief Financial Officer with the Trustee certifying (i) the Available Withholding Tax Revenues for a 12 consecutive month period of the immediately prior 15 months applicable to the Fiscal Year in which such Additional Bonds are to be issued or Senior Obligations are to be incurred, (ii) the Available Tax Revenues for the same 12 consecutive month period of the immediately prior 15 months that is used to calculate the Available Withholding Tax Revenues, and (iii) the Maximum Annual Debt Service that will be due on the Senior Bonds, including such Additional Bonds and the Senior Obligations, in any subsequent Fiscal Year, and showing that the amount in clause (i) at least equals 2 times the amount in clause (iii), and the amount in clause (ii) at least equals 3 times the amount in clause (iii). The satisfaction of the preceding conditions is referred to herein as the "Additional Bonds Test."

In addition, Additional Bonds may only be issued upon receipt by the Trustee of a certificate of the Chief Financial Officer certifying that the issuance of such Additional Bonds does not create a violation of the Debt Ceiling Act (as defined below) or of Section 603(b) of the Home Rule Act. Solely for the purpose of determining whether Section 603(b) is violated, the Bonds, including the Additional Bonds to be issued, are treated as outstanding general obligation bonds. See "—Statutory Debt Limitations" herein.

The District may issue Subordinate Bonds or incur Subordinate Obligations pursuant to the Master Indenture at any time following receipt of written confirmation from each Rating Agency that its

Rating on the Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations (to the extent that such obligations are rated) will not be lower than the Rating in effect prior to the issuance of the proposed Subordinate Bonds or Subordinate Obligations as a direct result of such issuance. Pursuant to the Act and the Indenture, the payment of debt service on Subordinate Bonds and Subordinate Obligations is subordinate to the payment of debt service on Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations. Subordinate Bonds and Subordinate Obligations are not equally and ratably secured with Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations by the Trust Estate.

### **Statutory Debt Limitations**

In 2009, the District passed the Limitation on Borrowing and Establishment of the Operating Cash Reserve Act of 2008, effective March 25, 2009, as amended (D.C. Law 17-360; D.C. Official Code §47-334 et seq.) (the “Debt Ceiling Act”) imposing a further limit on the issuance of any District general obligation bonds, Treasury capital-project loans, tax-supported revenue bonds, notes or other debt instruments secured by revenues derived from taxes, fees, or other general revenues of the District, or its agencies and authorities, pursuant to the District’s power to tax and impose fees, including TIF Bonds and PILOT Notes (as hereinafter defined), certificates of participation and lease purchase financing obligations (collectively, with the exceptions noted in the Debt Ceiling Act, “Tax-Supported Debt”), but excluding revenue bonds, notes, or other debt instruments issued for the purpose of funding water and sewer facilities, as described in section 490(a) of the Home Rule Act, and bonds, notes, or other debt instruments paid or secured by revenues from the Master Settlement Agreement with tobacco companies, federal grants, or revenues from the operation of public enterprises, so long as those enterprises are fully self-supporting, if such issuance would result in total debt service in the Fiscal Year of issuance, or any of the three succeeding Fiscal Years, on all outstanding Tax-Supported Debt exceeding 12% of annual District General Fund expenditures and transfers in any applicable Fiscal Year, as contained in the most recently enacted District budget (the “Debt Ceiling”).

Following the issuance of the Series 2014A Bonds, the District will have approximately \$9.0 billion of Tax-Supported Debt outstanding, the debt service on which will produce a Debt Ceiling percentage of approximately 10.6% in Fiscal Year 2015 and will not exceed 12% in each of the next five Fiscal Years, which will comply with the Debt Ceiling Act. See also “CERTAIN DISTRICT FINANCIAL INFORMATION – Indebtedness – Summary of Statutory Debt Provisions” in Part 2.

### **LITIGATION**

There is no litigation pending in any court or, to the knowledge of the Office of the Attorney General for the District of Columbia, threatened, which may have the effect of restraining or enjoining the issuance, delivery or payment of the Series 2014A Bonds or the performance of the obligations of the District or the Mayor under the Indenture, the Series 2014A Bonds, the Approval Resolution or the Act or which in any way contests or may call into question the validity or enforceability of (a) the Series 2014A Bonds or the pledge of the Trust Estate for their payment or (b) the Act or the Approval Resolution or the obligations of the District or the Mayor thereunder.

The District annually estimates the litigation obligations that it expects will be incurred during a Fiscal Year, and provides for such estimated amount in developing its budget for such Fiscal Year. There is no litigation pending in any court, or to the knowledge of the Office of the Attorney General for the District of Columbia, threatened, which would have a material adverse impact on the District’s ability to repay the Series 2014A Bonds or the District’s long term financial condition.

## TAX MATTERS

*General.* The Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”) establishes certain requirements which must be met subsequent to the issuance of the Series 2014A Bonds in order that interest on the Series 2014A Bonds be and remain excluded from gross income for purposes of federal income taxation. Non-compliance may cause interest on the Series 2014A Bonds to be included in federal gross income retroactive to the date of issuance of the Series 2014A Bonds, regardless of the date on which such non-compliance occurs or is ascertained. These requirements include, but are not limited to, provisions which prescribe yield and other limits within which the proceeds of the Series 2014A Bonds and the other amounts are to be invested and require that certain investment earnings on the foregoing must be rebated on a periodic basis to the Treasury Department of the United States (the “Treasury”). The District has covenanted to comply with such requirements in order to maintain the exclusion from gross income for federal income tax purposes of the interest on the Series 2014A Bonds.

In the opinion of Bond Counsel, assuming compliance with certain covenants, under existing laws, regulations, judicial decisions, and rulings, interest on the Series 2014A Bonds is excluded from gross income for purposes of federal income taxation. Interest on the Series 2014A Bonds is not an item of tax preference for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax imposed on individuals or corporations, however, when Series 2014A Bonds are held by a corporation, interest on the Series 2014A Bonds may be subject to the alternative minimum tax. The federal alternative minimum taxable income of a corporation must be increased by 75% of the excess of such corporation’s adjusted current earnings over its alternative minimum taxable income (before this adjustment and the alternative tax net operating loss deduction). “Adjusted Current Earnings” will include interest on the Series 2014A Bonds. In addition, the Series 2014A Bonds and the interest thereon are exempt from District taxation, except estate, inheritance and gift taxes.

Except as described above, Bond Counsel will express no opinion regarding any other federal income tax consequences resulting from the ownership of, receipt or accrual of interest on, or disposition of, the Series 2014A Bonds. Prospective purchasers of the Series 2014A Bonds should be aware that the ownership of Series 2014A Bonds may result in collateral federal income tax consequences, including (i) the denial of a deduction for interest on indebtedness incurred or continued to purchase or carry Series 2014A Bonds; (ii) the reduction of the loss reserve deduction for property and casualty insurance companies by fifteen percent (15%) of certain items, including interest on the Series 2014A Bonds; (iii) the inclusion of interest on the Series 2014A Bonds in earnings of certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States for purposes of branch profits tax; (iv) the inclusion of interest on the Series 2014A Bonds in passive income subject to federal income taxation of certain Subchapter S corporations with Subchapter C earnings and profits at the close of the taxable year; and (v) the inclusion of interest on the Series 2014A Bonds in “modified adjusted gross income” by recipients of certain Social Security and Railroad Retirement benefits for the purposes of determining whether such benefits are included in gross income for federal income tax purposes. Other provisions of the Code may give rise to adverse federal income tax consequences to particular Bondholders.

As to questions of fact material to the opinions of Bond Counsel, Bond Counsel will rely upon representations and covenants made on behalf of the District, certificates of appropriate officers and certificates of public officials (including certifications as to the use of proceeds of the Series 2014A Bonds and of the property financed or refinanced thereby), without undertaking to verify the same by independent investigation.

**PURCHASE, OWNERSHIP, SALE OR DISPOSITION OF THE SERIES 2014A BONDS AND THE RECEIPT OR ACCRUAL OF THE INTEREST THEREON MAY HAVE ADVERSE FEDERAL**

TAX CONSEQUENCES FOR CERTAIN INDIVIDUAL AND CORPORATE HOLDERS OF THE SERIES 2014A BONDS, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE CONSEQUENCES DESCRIBED ABOVE. PROSPECTIVE HOLDERS OF THE SERIES 2014A BONDS SHOULD CONSULT WITH THEIR TAX SPECIALISTS FOR INFORMATION IN THAT REGARD.

*Information Reporting and Backup Withholding.* Interest paid on tax-exempt bonds such as the Series 2014A Bonds is subject to information reporting to the Internal Revenue Service in a manner similar to interest paid on taxable obligations. This reporting requirement does not affect the excludability of interest on the Series 2014A Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes. However, in conjunction with that information reporting requirement, the Code subjects certain non-corporate owners of Series 2014A Bonds, under certain circumstances, to “backup withholding” at the rate specified in the Code with respect to payments on the Series 2014A Bonds and proceeds from the sale of Series 2014A Bonds. Any amount so withheld would be refunded or allowed as a credit against the federal income tax of such owner of Series 2014A Bonds. This withholding generally applies if the owner of Series 2014A Bonds (i) fails to furnish the payor such owner’s social security number or other taxpayer identification number (“TIN”), (ii) furnished the payor an incorrect TIN, (iii) fails to properly report interest, dividends, or other “reportable payments” as defined in the Code, or (iv) under certain circumstances, fails to provide the payor or such owner’s securities broker with a certified statement, signed under penalty of perjury, that the TIN provided is correct and that such owner is not subject to backup withholding. Prospective purchasers of the Series 2014A Bonds also may wish to consult with their tax advisors with respect to the need to furnish certain taxpayer information in order to avoid backup withholding.

*Other Tax Matters Relating to the Bonds.* During recent years, legislative proposals have been introduced in Congress, and in some cases enacted, that altered certain federal tax consequences resulting from the ownership of obligations that are similar to the Series 2014A Bonds. In some cases, these proposals have contained provisions that altered these consequences on a retroactive basis. Such alteration of federal tax consequences may have affected the market value of obligations similar to the Series 2014A Bonds. From time to time, legislative proposals are pending which could have an effect on both the federal tax consequences resulting from ownership of the Series 2014A Bonds and their market value. No assurance can be given that legislative proposals will not be enacted that would apply to, or have an adverse effect upon, the Series 2014A Bonds. For example, in connection with federal deficit reduction, job creation and tax law reform efforts, proposals have been and others are likely to be made that could significantly reduce the benefit of, or otherwise affect, the exclusion from gross income of interest on obligations like the Series 2014A Bonds. There can be no assurance that any such legislation or proposal will be enacted, and if enacted, what form it may take. The introduction or enactment of any such legislative proposals may affect, perhaps significantly, the market price for, or marketability of, the Series 2014A Bonds.

Prospective purchasers of the Series 2014A Bonds should consult their own tax advisors as to the tax consequences of owning the Series 2014A Bonds in their particular state or local jurisdiction and regarding any pending or proposed federal or state tax legislation, regulations or litigation, as to which Bond Counsel expresses no opinion.

*Tax Treatment of Bond Premium for the Series 2014A Bonds.* The difference between the principal amount of the Series 2014A Bonds (collectively, the “Premium Bonds”) and the initial offering price to the public (excluding bond houses, brokers or similar persons or organizations acting in the capacity of underwriters or wholesalers) at which price a substantial amount of such Premium Bonds of the same maturity, and, if applicable, interest rate, was sold constitutes to an initial purchaser amortizable bond premium which is not deductible from gross income for federal income tax purposes. The amount

of amortizable bond premium for a taxable year is determined actuarially on a constant interest rate basis over the term of each of the Premium Bonds, which ends on the earlier of the maturity or call date for each of the Premium Bonds which minimizes the yield on such Premium Bonds to the purchaser. For purposes of determining gain or loss on the sale or other disposition of a Premium Bond, an initial purchaser who acquires such obligation in the initial offering price is required to decrease such purchaser's adjusted basis in such Premium Bond annually by the amount of amortizable bond premium for the taxable year. The amortization of bond premium may be taken into account as a reduction in the amount of tax-exempt income for purposes of determining various other tax consequences of owning such Premium Bonds. Bondholders of the Premium Bonds are advised that they should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning such Premium Bonds.

### **FINANCIAL ADVISORS**

Public Resources Advisory Group, Inc., New York, New York, and First Southwest Company, Dallas, Texas (together, the "Financial Advisors"), serve as financial advisors to the District for debt management and certain other financial matters. The Financial Advisors have provided certain services to the District in connection with the issuance of the Series 2014A Bonds and have assisted in the preparation of this Official Statement.

The Financial Advisors have not undertaken to make an independent verification of, or to assume responsibility for, the accuracy, completeness or fairness of the information contained in the Official Statement.

### **VERIFICATION OF MATHEMATICAL CALCULATIONS**

Samuel Klein and Company, Certified Public Accountants (the "Verification Agent") will verify from the information provided to them the mathematical accuracy, as of the date of delivery of the Series 2014A Bonds, of the computations contained in the provided schedules to determine that the amount to be deposited pursuant to the escrow agreement related to the 2006 Refunded Certificates will be sufficient to pay, when due, the principal, or Redemption Price of and interest on the 2006 Refunded Certificates. The Verification Agent will express no opinion on the assumptions provided to it, nor as to the exclusion of the interest on the Series 2014A Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes.

### **LEGAL INVESTMENT IN DISTRICT OBLIGATIONS**

Section 486 of the Home Rule Act (D.C. Official Code § 1-204.86) provides that, notwithstanding any restriction on the investment of funds by fiduciaries contained in any other District law, domestic insurance associations, executors, administrators, guardians, trustees and other fiduciaries within the District of Columbia may legally invest any sinking funds, moneys, trust funds or other funds belonging to them or under or within their control in any bond issued in accordance with the Home Rule Act. Section 486 of the Home Rule Act also provides that all federal building and loan associations and federal savings and loan associations and banks, trust companies, building and loan associations and savings and loan associations, domiciled in the District of Columbia, may purchase, sell, underwrite, and deal in, for their own account or for the account of others, all bonds issued in accordance with the Home Rule Act.

## **LEGAL MATTERS**

The validity of the Series 2014A Bonds and certain other legal matters are subject to the approving opinion of Bryant Miller Olive P.C., Washington, D.C., Bond Counsel to the District. A complete copy of the proposed form of Bond Counsel opinion is set forth as APPENDIX A hereto.

Certain legal matters will be passed on for the District by the Office of the Attorney General for the District of Columbia. Edwards Wildman Palmer LLP, Washington, D.C., Disclosure Counsel to the District, will deliver an opinion to the District and the Underwriters regarding certain matters. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriters by their co-counsel, Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Washington, D.C., and Lewis & Munday, A Professional Corporation, Washington, D.C.

Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Washington, D.C., represents the District from time to time as bond counsel in municipal bond transactions and other matters.

## **CONTINUING DISCLOSURE**

The District will undertake in a Continuing Disclosure Agreement to assist the Underwriters in complying with the provisions of Rule 15c2-12 (the “Rule”), promulgated by the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) by providing annual financial information, operating data and event notices required by the Rule. As described in APPENDIX D, such undertaking requires the District to provide only limited information at specified times. DAC is disclosure dissemination agent for the District.

The District is required to provide, by no later than five months after the end of its Fiscal Year (i.e., by March 1), financial information and operating data on an annual basis pursuant to continuing disclosure agreements entered into in connection with prior issuances of Bonds and general obligation bonds. That financial information and operating data is contained in the CAFR, and accordingly the District satisfies its continuing disclosure agreement by filing its annual CAFR.

The following information describes the instances of non-compliance known to the District in the previous five years with the terms of certain of its previous undertakings entered into pursuant to the Rule.

With respect to the District’s Income Tax Secured Revenue Bonds, Series 2009A, 2009B, 2009C, 2009D, 2009E, 2010A, 2010B and 2010C (which were refunded in 2011), the District has determined that it did not file a notice of a rating upgrade by Fitch Ratings, Inc. (“Fitch”) that occurred on April 5, 2010, and a rating upgrade by Moody’s Investors Service, Inc. (“Moody’s”) that occurred on April 16, 2010, until May 3, 2010. Had the amendments to Rule 15c2-12 (effective December 1, 2010) requiring such event notices to be filed within 10 business days of the occurrence of the event, been applicable, the timing of these filings would not have been in compliance with the Rule.

The District had previously determined that it did not timely file a notice of mandatory tender for its Multimodal General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2002D, which were refunded in 2010, and a notice of defeasance for its General Obligation Bonds, Series 2002C, which were refunded in 2012. The District filed these notices and took steps to ensure that all future such notices will be filed in a timely manner.

The District also recently determined with respect to its General Obligation Bonds, Series 2004A (which were refunded in 2012), General Obligation Bonds, Series 2004B, General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2005B, General Obligation Bonds, Series 2007C, Gallery Place Project Tax Increment

Revenue Bonds, Series 2002 (which were refunded in 2012) (the “Gallery Place TIF Bonds”), and Mandarin Oriental Hotel Project Tax Increment Revenue Bonds, Series 2002 (the “Mandarin Hotel TIF Bonds”), that it failed to file notice of a rating downgrade by Fitch of Financial Security Assurance Inc. (FSA) on October 12, 2009 affecting the insured ratings on such bonds. Notice of a rating downgrade on October 25, 2010 by Standard & Poor’s Ratings Services (“S&P”) of its rating of Assured Guaranty Municipal Corp. (formerly FSA) affecting the insured ratings on such bonds was filed by the District, however. Additionally, the District determined that it failed to file notice of a withdrawal by Fitch of its ratings on the Gallery Place TIF Bonds and the Mandarin Hotel TIF Bonds on October 19, 2009. Except as noted in the following sentence with respect to the Mandarin Hotel TIF Bonds, the District has not filed and does not intend to file any notice with respect to the downgrade or withdrawal of ratings by Fitch in October 2009, as subsequent refundings or rating changes have superseded those events and notices were previously filed with respect to those changes, including the now current rating on such outstanding bonds. With respect to the Mandarin Hotel TIF Bonds, the District does not intend to make any additional filing regarding the withdrawal of the Fitch rating in October 2009 because these bonds have not been rated by Fitch since that time.

In addition, the District filed a notice of a rating upgrade by S&P of Assured Guaranty Ltd. (“Assured”) dated March 18, 2014, which affected the insured ratings on certain bonds issued by the District and insured by Assured, but failed to include the Mandarin Hotel TIF Bonds among the bonds identified in the notice filing. The notice failure with respect to the Mandarin Hotel TIF Bonds insured by Assured was cured by the District on July 17, 2014.

### **Continuing Disclosure Filings**

The District’s prior continuing disclosure filings since July 2009 are available at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

## **RATINGS**

S&P, Moody’s and Fitch have assigned ratings of “AAA,” “Aa1” and “AA+,” respectively, to the Series 2014A Bonds, and the outlook for each such rating is “stable.” A rating, including any related outlook with respect to potential changes in such rating, reflects only the view of the rating agency assigning such rating and is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold the Series 2014A Bonds. An explanation of the procedure and methodology used by each rating agency and the significance of the ratings may be obtained from Standard & Poor’s Ratings Services, 55 Water Street, New York, New York; Moody’s Investors Service, Inc., 7 World Trade Center, New York, New York; and Fitch Ratings, Inc., One State Street Plaza, New York, New York. Such ratings may be changed at any time and no assurance can be given that they will not be revised, downgraded or withdrawn entirely by any such rating agencies. Any such downgrade, revision or withdrawal of a rating may have an effect on the market price of or market for the Series 2014A Bonds.

## **UNDERWRITING**

The underwriters identified on the cover of this Official Statement (the “Underwriters”) have agreed to purchase the Series 2014A Bonds from the District at an aggregate price of \$183,194,266.84, reflecting the aggregate principal amount of the Series 2014A Bonds of \$155,665,000, plus original issue premium of \$28,134,000.85, less the Underwriters’ discount of \$604,734.01. The obligation of the Underwriters to purchase the Series 2014A Bonds is subject to certain terms and conditions set forth in the Bond Purchase Agreement dated August 19, 2014 relating to the Series 2014A Bonds, between the District and the Underwriters. The Series 2014A Bonds may be offered and sold to certain dealers, banks

and others at prices lower than the initial public offering price, and such initial offering price may be changed from time to time, by the Underwriters.

Siebert Brandford Shank & Co., L.L.C., one of the Underwriters of the Series 2014A Bonds, has entered into a separate agreement with Credit Suisse Securities USA LLC for retail distribution of certain municipal securities offerings, at the original issue prices. Pursuant to said agreement, if applicable to the Series 2014A Bonds, Siebert Brandford Shank & Co., L.L.C. will share a portion of its underwriting compensation with respect to the Series 2014A Bonds, with Credit Suisse Securities USA LLC.

J.P. Morgan Securities LLC (“JPMS”), one of the Underwriters of the Series 2014A Bonds, has entered into a negotiated dealer agreement (the “Dealer Agreement”) with Charles Schwab & Co., Inc. (“CS&Co.”) for the retail distribution of certain securities offerings, including the Series 2014A Bonds, at the original issue prices. Pursuant to the Dealer Agreement, CS&Co. will purchase Series 2014A Bonds from JPMS at the original issue price less a negotiated portion of the selling concession applicable to any Series 2014A Bonds that CS&Co. sells.

Wells Fargo Securities is the trade name for certain securities-related capital markets and investment banking services of Wells Fargo & Company and its subsidiaries, including Wells Fargo Bank, National Association (“WFBNA”). Wells Fargo Bank, National Association is serving as underwriter, collection agent and trustee for the Series 2014A Bonds. WFBNA, one of the underwriters of the Series 2014A Bonds, has entered into an agreement (the “Distribution Agreement”) with its affiliate, Wells Fargo Advisors, LLC (“WFA”), for the distribution of certain municipal securities offerings, including the Series 2014A Bonds. Pursuant to the Distribution Agreement, WFBNA will share a portion of its underwriting compensation, with respect to the Series 2014A Bonds, with WFA. WFBNA also utilizes the distribution capabilities of its affiliates, Wells Fargo Securities, LLC (“WFSLLC”) and Wells Fargo Institutional Securities, LLC (“WFIS”), for the distribution of municipal securities offerings, including the Series 2014A Bonds. In connection with utilizing the distribution capabilities of WFSLLC, WFBNA pays a portion of WFSLLC’s expenses based on its municipal securities transactions. WFBNA, WFSLLC, WFIS, and WFA are each wholly-owned subsidiaries of Wells Fargo & Company.

#### **EXECUTION OF OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

This Official Statement has been approved by the District for distribution to prospective purchasers of the Series 2014A Bonds.

#### **DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA**

By: /s/ Jeffrey S. DeWitt  
Jeffrey S. DeWitt  
Chief Financial Officer

[This page intentionally left blank]

## APPENDIX A

### FORM OF APPROVING OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL

September 10, 2014

District of Columbia  
John A. Wilson Building  
1350 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.  
Washington, D.C. 20004

**\$155,665,000**  
**District of Columbia**  
**Income Tax Secured**  
**Revenue Refunding Bonds**  
**Series 2014A**

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as Bond Counsel to the District of Columbia (the “District”) in connection with the issuance by the District of \$155,665,000 aggregate principal amount of its Income Tax Secured Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2014A (the “Series 2014A Bonds”). In such capacity, we have examined such law and certified proceedings, certifications and other documents as we have deemed necessary to render this opinion. Reference is made to the form of the Series 2014A Bonds for information concerning their details, including payment and redemption provisions, their purpose and the proceedings pursuant to which they are issued.

The Series 2014A Bonds are authorized pursuant to the District of Columbia Home Rule Act, approved December 24, 1973 (Pub. L. No. 93-198; 87 Stat. 777; D.C. Official Code §§ 1-201.01 et seq.), as amended (the “Home Rule Act”), the Income Tax Secured Bond Authorization Act of 2008 (D.C. Law 17-254; D.C. Official Code §§ 47-340.26-36), effective October 22, 2008, as amended by the Income Tax Secured Bond Authorization Act of 2013, effective December 5, 2013 (D.C. Law 20-46) (the “Authorizing Act”), and the Fiscal Year 2014 Income Tax Secured Revenue Bond and General Obligation Bond Issuance Approval Resolution of 2013, R20-321, effective November 5, 2013, authorizing the District to issue the Series 2014A Bonds (the “Authorizing Resolution,” and together with the Home Rule Act and the Authorizing Act, the “Authorizing Actions”). The Series 2014A Bonds are issued under and are equally and ratably secured by a Master Indenture of Trust (the “Master Indenture”) dated as of March 1, 2009,

between the District and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., as trustee (the "Trustee"), as supplemented by a Third Supplemental Indenture of Trust between the same parties dated September 16, 2011 (the "Third Supplemental") and Article VII of that certain Fourteenth Supplemental Indenture of Trust dated as of December 1, 2011 (the "Fourteenth Supplemental"), and as further supplemented by a Eighteenth Supplemental Indenture of Trust between the same parties, dated as of September 1, 2014 (the "Eighteenth Supplemental", and together with the Master Indenture of Trust, the Third Supplemental and the Fourteenth Supplemental the "Indenture"). Pursuant to the terms, conditions and limitations contained in the Indenture, the District has previously issued Bonds of which \$\_\_\_\_\_ principal amount remains outstanding, and reserved the right to issue Additional Bonds, all of which have or will have a parity lien on the Available Tax Revenues equal to that of the Series 2014A Bonds.

As to questions of fact material to our opinion, we have relied upon representations of the District contained in the Indenture and in the certified proceedings and other certifications of public officials and others furnished to us, without undertaking to verify the same by independent investigation. We have not undertaken an independent audit, examination, investigation or inspection of such matters and have relied solely on the facts, estimates and circumstances described in such proceedings and certifications. We have assumed the genuineness of signatures on all documents and instruments, the authenticity of documents submitted as originals and the conformity to originals of documents submitted as copies.

The opinions set forth below are expressly limited to, and we opine only with respect to, the laws of the District of Columbia and the federal income tax laws of the United States of America.

Based on the foregoing, and assuming the due authorization, execution and delivery of the documents described below by parties thereto other than the District, we are of the opinion that under existing law:

(1) The District has the corporate power and authority to enter into and perform its obligations under the Indenture, to issue the Series 2014A Bonds, to apply the proceeds of the Series 2014A Bonds in the manner described in the Indenture and to pledge and assign the Trust Estate to the Trustee under the Indenture.

(2) The Series 2014A Bonds have been duly authorized and issued in accordance with the Authorizing Actions and constitute valid and binding revenue obligations of the

District, enforceable in accordance with their terms, payable as to principal, premium, if any, and interest thereon solely from the revenues and receipts pledged thereto including the Available Tax Revenues pursuant to the Indenture. The Series 2014A Bonds do not constitute or make a pledge or involve the faith and credit or taxing power (other than with respect to the Available Tax Revenues) of the District, do not constitute a debt of the District pursuant to the Home Rule Act and do not constitute a lending of the public credit of the District for a private undertaking prohibited by section 602(a)(2) of the Home Rule Act.

(3) The Indenture has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the District, constitutes a valid and binding agreement of the District and is enforceable against the District in accordance with its terms. The Indenture creates the valid pledge of the Available Tax Revenues and any other amounts held by the Trustee in any fund or account established pursuant to the Indenture (except the Rebate Fund, the Costs of Issuance Account and the Bond Proceeds Account) which it purports to create, which pledge secures the payment of the principal of and interest on the Series 2014A Bonds, subject to the provisions of the Indenture permitting the application thereof for the purposes and on the terms and conditions set forth in the Indenture.

(4) Interest on the Series 2014A Bonds is excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes and is not an item of tax preference for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax imposed on individuals and corporations. However, interest on the Series 2014A Bonds is taken into account in determining adjusted current earnings for purposes of computing the alternative minimum tax on corporations. The opinions set forth in this paragraph are subject to the condition that the District complies with all requirements of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code") that must be satisfied subsequent to the issuance of the Series 2014A Bonds in order that the interest thereon be, and continue to be, excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes. The District has covenanted in the Indenture to comply with all such requirements. Failure to comply with certain of such requirements may cause interest on the Series 2014A Bonds to be included in gross income for federal income tax purposes retroactively to the date of issuance of the Series 2014A Bonds.

(5) Interest on the Series 2014A Bonds is exempt from taxation by the District, except estate, inheritance and gift taxes.

It is to be understood that the rights of the owners of the Series 2014A Bonds and the enforceability thereof may be subject to the exercise of judicial discretion in accordance with

general principles of equity, to the valid exercise of the sovereign police powers of the District of Columbia and of the constitutional powers of the United States of America and to bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium and other similar laws affecting creditors' rights heretofore or hereafter enacted.

For purposes of this opinion, we have not been engaged or undertaken to review and, therefore, express no opinion herein regarding the accuracy, completeness or adequacy of the Official Statement or any other offering material relating to the Series 2014A Bonds. This opinion should not be construed as offering material, an offering circular, prospectus or official statement and is not intended in any way to be a disclosure statement used in connection with the sale or delivery of the Series 2014A Bonds. Furthermore, we are not passing on the accuracy or sufficiency of any CUSIP numbers appearing on the Series 2014A Bonds. In addition, we have not been engaged to and, therefore, express no opinion as to compliance by the District or the underwriter or underwriters with any federal or state statute, regulation or ruling with respect to the sale and distribution of the Series 2014A Bonds or regarding the perfection or priority of the lien on the Available Tax Revenues created by the Indenture. Further, we express no opinion regarding federal income or state tax consequences arising with respect to the Series 2014A Bonds other than as expressly set forth herein.

Our opinions expressed herein are predicated upon present law, facts and circumstances, and we assume no affirmative obligation to update the opinions expressed herein if such laws, facts or circumstances change after the date hereof.

Respectfully submitted,

BRYANT MILLER OLIVE P.C.

## APPENDIX B

### SUMMARY OF CERTAIN DEFINITIONS AND PROVISIONS OF THE INDENTURE

#### Summary of Certain Definitions

*The following terms shall have the following meanings in the Indenture and for all purposes of this Official Statement.*

**Account or Accounts** means any account or accounts, as the case may be, established and created pursuant to the Indenture, but does not include any escrow or other fund or account established or created pursuant to the provisions of the Indenture relating to the defeasance of Bonds.

**Accumulation Account** means the Accumulation Account established in the Debt Service Fund by the Indenture.

**Act** means the Income Tax Secured Bond Authorization Act of 2008, effective October 22, 2008 (D.C. Law 17-254; D.C. Official Code §§ 47-340.26-36), as amended.

**Additional Bonds** means additional Senior Bonds issued pursuant to the Master Indenture.

**Adjustable Rate** means a variable, adjustable or similar interest rate or rates to be borne by a Series of Bonds or any one or more maturities within a Series of Bonds, for which the method of computing such variable interest rate is specified in the Supplemental Indenture authorizing such Bonds; provided, that the related Supplemental Indenture shall specify (i) whether a Qualified Hedge is to be applicable to such Adjustable Rate Bonds and, if not, or to the extent not so applicable, a Contractual Maximum Interest Rate, and (ii) the method or methods for determining the Adjustable Rate and the frequency of change thereof; provided further, that the method or methods for determining the Adjustable Rate may include the selection of such rate by an indexing agent or remarketing agent as provided in an agreement between the District and such agent, the utilization of an index or indices as described in the related Supplemental Indenture, the utilization of an auction as described in the related Supplemental Indenture, or such other standard or standards set forth by the District in the related Supplemental Indenture or any combination of the foregoing; and provided further, that the Adjustable Rate may never exceed any Contractual Maximum Interest Rate related thereto or, if none, the Legal Maximum Interest Rate (the “rate cap”), but, if the District so elects in the applicable Financing Documents, the excess of interest on any Adjustable Rate Bond calculated at the rate (the “stated rate”) set forth for such Adjustable Rate Bond (without the limitation of the rate cap) over interest on the Adjustable Rate Bond calculated at the rate cap shall constitute a debt of the District owed to the owner of the related Adjustable Rate Bond but solely during periods when the rate cap shall exceed the stated rate.

**Adjustable Rate Bond** means any Bond which bears an Adjustable Rate, provided that a Bond the interest rate on which shall have been fixed for the remainder of the term thereof shall no longer be an Adjustable Rate Bond.

**Amortized Value**, when used with respect to Investment Obligations purchased at a premium above or a discount below par, means the value at any given date, as calculated by the District, obtained by dividing the total premium or discount at which such Investment Obligations were purchased by the number of interest payment dates remaining to maturity on such Investment Obligations after such purchase and by multiplying the amount so calculated by the number of interest payment dates having passed since the date of such purchase; and (i) in the case of Investment Obligations purchased at a premium, by deducting the product thus obtained from the purchase price, and (ii) in the case of

Investment Obligations purchased at a discount, by adding the product thus obtained to the purchase price.

**Ancillary Bond Facility** means, collectively, each Credit Facility, each Liquidity Facility, and each Qualified Hedge.

**Ancillary Facility Providers** means, collectively, each Credit Facility Provider, each Liquidity Facility Provider, and each Qualified Hedge Provider.

**Annual Debt Service** means the amount of payments required to be made for principal of and interest on all Bonds, including mandatory sinking fund redemptions, and on all Obligations and to be made by the District, in each case to the extent secured by the Indenture, scheduled to come due within a specified Fiscal Year, computed as follows:

(a) In determining the amount of principal to be funded in each year, payment shall (unless a different subsection of this definition applies for purposes of determining principal maturities or amortization) be assumed to be made on Outstanding Bonds (other than Short-Term/Demand Obligations) in accordance with any amortization schedule established by the governing documents setting forth the terms of such Bonds, including, as a principal payment, the Compounded Amounts of any Capital Appreciation Bonds or Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds maturing or scheduled for redemption in such year; and in determining the amount of interest to be funded in each year, (i) interest payable at a fixed rate shall (except to the extent any other subsection of this definition applies) be assumed to be made at such fixed rate and on the required funding dates, and (ii) such amount of interest shall not include interest to the extent it is to be paid from a direct subsidy payment expected to be received from the United States Treasury relating to “Build America Bonds” issued pursuant to 54AA of the Code, or any other interest subsidy or similar payments made by the Federal government.

(b) Adjustable Rate Bonds shall be deemed to bear interest at the Assumed Rate.

(c) If all or any portion of an Outstanding Series of Bonds constitute Balloon Maturities, unissued Program Bonds or Short-Term/Demand Obligations, then, for purposes of determining Annual Debt Service, each maturity that constitutes a Balloon Maturity, unissued Program Bonds or Short-Term/Demand Obligations shall, unless otherwise provided in the Supplemental Indenture pursuant to which such Bonds are authorized or unless provision (d) of this definition then applies to such maturity, be treated as if it were to be amortized over a term of not more than 30 years and with substantially level annual debt service funding payments commencing not later than the year following the year in which such Balloon Maturity, unissued Program Bonds or Short-Term/Demand Obligations were issued, and extending not later than 30 years from the date such Balloon Maturity, unissued Program Bonds or Short-Term/Demand Obligations were originally issued; the interest rate used for such computation shall be that rate quoted in The Bond Buyer 25-Revenue Bond Index for the last week of the month preceding the date of calculation as published by The Bond Buyer, or if that index is no longer published, another similar index designated by the Chief Financial Officer, taking into consideration whether such Bonds bear interest which is or is not excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes; with respect to any Series of Bonds only a portion of which constitutes Balloon Maturities, unissued Program Bonds or Short-Term/Demand Obligations, the remaining portion shall be treated as described in (a) above or such other provision of this definition as shall be applicable, and with respect to that portion of a Series that constitutes Balloon Maturities, all funding requirements of principal and interest becoming due in any year other than the stated maturity of the Balloon Indebtedness shall be treated as described in (a) above or such other provision of this definition as shall be applicable.

(d) Any maturity of Bonds that constitutes a Balloon Maturity as described in provision (d) of this definition and for which the stated maturity date occurs within 12 months from the date such calculation of Annual Debt Service is made, shall be assumed to become due and payable on the stated maturity date, and provision (c) above shall not apply thereto, unless there is delivered to the entity making the calculation of Annual Debt Service a certificate of the Chief Financial Officer stating (i) that the District intends to refinance such maturity, (ii) the probable terms of such refinancing and (iii) that the debt capacity of the District is sufficient to successfully complete such refinancing; upon the receipt of such certificate, such Balloon Maturity shall be assumed to be refinanced in accordance with the probable terms set out in such certificate and such terms shall be used for purposes of calculating Annual Debt Service; provided that such assumption shall not result in an interest rate lower than that which would be assumed under provision (c) above and shall be amortized over a term of not more than 30 years from the expected date of refinancing.

(e) In any computation relating to the issuance of additional Bonds required by the Master Indenture, there shall be excluded from the computation of Annual Debt Service principal of and interest on indebtedness for which funds are, or are reasonably expected to be, available for and which are irrevocably committed and deposited to make such payments, including without limitation any such funds in an escrow account or any such funds constituting capitalized interest held in any fund or account created by the Indenture.

**Assumed Interest Rate** means, for Adjustable Rate Bonds, (i) a fixed rate payable by the District under a related Qualified Hedge plus the fixed component of interest on the related Bonds, if any, not included in the payments to be made under the Qualified Hedge by the Qualified Hedge Provider, (ii) for any Qualified Hedge that shall provide for payments from the District that result in a capped rate on the Adjustable Rate Bonds, such capped rate, or (iii) for any Adjustable Rate Bonds that shall not be the subject of a Qualified Hedge, the greater of (1) 125% of The Bond Buyer 20-Year Bond Index as published on the first business day of the current deposit month in the most recent edition of The Bond Buyer, or (2) the average rate on such bonds for the three preceding calendar months, provided, however, that such rate does not exceed the lesser of the Contractual Maximum Interest Rate established therefor and the Legal Maximum Interest Rate.

**Authorized Delegate** means the Chief Financial Officer, the Treasurer, or any Deputy Mayor in the executive office of the Mayor to whom the Mayor has delegated any of the Mayor's functions under the Act pursuant to § 1-204.22(6) of the D.C. Official Code.

**Authorized Representative** means the Chief Financial Officer or his designee.

**Available Business Franchise Tax Revenues** means the revenues resulting from the imposition of the Business Franchise Tax, including penalty and interest charges.

**Available Income Tax Revenues** means the revenues resulting from the imposition of the Income Tax, including penalty and interest charges.

**Available Tax Revenues** means the sum of the Available Business Franchise Tax Revenues and the Available Income Tax Revenues generated and to be generated in any fiscal year of the District.

**Available Withholding Tax Revenues** means, for each Fiscal Year, the amount of the withholding portion of the Available Income Tax Revenues, which amount is collected by the Collection Agent pursuant to the Collection Agreement.

**BABs Direct Subsidy Payments** means the direct subsidy payments received by the District from the United States Treasury (or the Federal Government) in an amount equal to a percentage of the interest paid on Build America Bonds.

**Build America Bond or BABs** means any taxable bond issued by the District pursuant to Section 54AA of the Code, or any successor thereto, for which either (1) the District receives direct subsidy payments in an amount equal to a percentage of the interest paid on such bond, or (2) the holder of such bond receives a tax credit in an amount equal to a percentage of the interest paid on such bond.

**Balloon Maturities** means, with respect to any Series of Bonds 50% or more of the principal of which matures on the same date or within a Fiscal Year, that portion of such Series which matures on such date or within such Fiscal Year. For purposes of this definition, the principal amount maturing on any date shall be reduced by the amount of such Bonds scheduled to be amortized by prepayment or redemption prior to their stated maturity date. Commercial paper, bond anticipation notes, Option Bonds, Fixed Tender Bonds and other Short Term/Demand Obligations shall not constitute Balloon Maturities.

**Beneficiaries** means (i) Bondholders, (ii) Credit Facility Providers and Liquidity Facility Providers as to which there are Senior Obligations or Subordinate Obligations outstanding, and (iii) Qualified Hedge Providers as to which there are Qualified Hedges outstanding.

**Bond or Bonds** means, collectively, Senior Bonds, Subordinate Bonds, and any other Bonds, notes, or other obligations, including refunding bonds, notes, bond anticipation notes, commercial paper and other obligations, in one or more series, issued pursuant to the Master Indenture.

**Bondholder** means any person who shall be the registered owner of any Outstanding Bond or Bonds.

**Bond Payment Date** means each date on which Principal Installments of and/or interest on Bonds are due and payable by the District.

**Bond Proceeds Fund** means the Fund by that name established by the Indenture.

**Bond Year** means a twelve-month period commencing on the first day of December in any calendar year and ending on the last day of November in the immediately succeeding calendar year.

**Business Day** means any day other than (i) a Saturday or Sunday, (ii) a day on which banking institutions in Washington, D.C., New York, New York, or any city in which the principal office of the Trustee, any Credit Facility Provider (if applicable) or any Liquidity Facility Provider (if applicable) is located are authorized or required by law or executive order to remain closed, or (iii) during any period that a Qualified Hedge is applicable to the Bonds, a day on which commercial banks and foreign exchange markets are not open for business (including dealings in foreign exchange and foreign currency deposits) in Washington, D.C., or New York, New York and do not settle payments.

**Business Franchise Tax** means the franchise tax imposed on corporations and unincorporated businesses pursuant to Sections 47-1807.02, 47-1808.03 and 47-1817.06 of the D.C. Official Code, as amended.

**Capital Appreciation Bonds** means the Bonds of any Series so designated in a Supplemental Indenture and including all Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds; provided, however, that the term "Capital Appreciation Bonds" shall only be used with respect to Bonds the interest on which is payable only at maturity (with respect to Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds, on the related Current Interest

Commencement Date rather than at maturity) or earlier redemption or acceleration of maturity in amounts determined by reference to the Compounded Amount of each Bond.

**Capitalized Interest Account** means the Capitalized Interest Account within the Bond Proceeds Fund established pursuant to the Indenture.

**Capital Project Fund** means the fund by that name maintained by the District, separate and apart from the General Fund.

**Capital Projects** means the payment of the cost of acquiring, undertaking or refinancing capital projects authorized by § 1-204.90 of the D.C. Official Code for general governmental and enterprise purposes, including reimbursing amounts temporarily advanced from the General Fund of the District, any enterprise fund, or other fund or account of the District, and the refunding of Outstanding Debt.

**Chief Financial Officer** means the Chief Financial Officer of the District.

**Closing Date** means September 10, 2014.

**Closing Documents** means all documents and agreements other than Financing Documents that may be necessary or appropriate to issue, sell, and deliver the Bonds contemplated thereby, and includes agreements, certificates, letters, opinions, forms, receipts, and other similar instruments.

**Code** means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and any regulations promulgated thereunder.

**Collection Account** means the account or accounts established and held by the Collection Agent pursuant to the Collection Agreement for the benefit of the Bondholders, into which the Collection Agent, on behalf of the Trustee, shall deposit the Available Tax Revenues in accordance with the provisions of the Act, and maintained as an Account within the Income Tax Secured Bond Fund pursuant to the Master Indenture.

**Collection Agent** means the financial institution or institutions acting as agent for the Trustee and selected by the Chief Financial Officer to receive Available Tax Revenues for deposit into the Collection Account of the District of Columbia Income Tax Secured Bond Fund in accordance with Section 47-304.27(c) of the D.C. Official Code and the Collection Agreement; the Collection Agent also may serve as Trustee.

**Collection Agreement** means the Collection Agreement by and between the Trustee and the Collection Agent relating to the Collection Account maintained by the Collection Agent on behalf of the Trustee pursuant to the Act.

**Compounded Amount** means, on any date and with respect to any particular Capital Appreciation Bond or Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond, the initial principal amount at issuance of such Bond plus accretion of principal, based on compounding on each Compounding Date to the date of maturity thereof (with respect to a Capital Appreciation Bond) or to the Current Interest Commencement Date (with respect to a Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond) at the same interest rate as shall produce a compound amount on such date of maturity or Current Interest Commencement Date, as applicable, equal to the principal amount thereof on such date; provided, that Compounded Amount on any day which is not a Compounding Date shall be determined on the assumption that the Compounded Amount accrues in equal daily amounts between Compounding Dates.

**Compounding Date** means the date on which interest on a Capital Appreciation Bond or Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond is compounded and added to principal in the form of Compounded Amount, as set forth in the related Supplemental Indenture.

**Contractual Maximum Interest Rate** means, with respect to any particular Adjustable Rate Bond, a numerical rate of interest, which shall be set forth in the Supplemental Indenture authorizing such Bond, that as a matter of contract shall be the maximum rate at which such Bond may bear interest at any time; provided, that the Contractual Maximum Interest Rate may not exceed the Legal Maximum Interest Rate.

**Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds** means Bonds which, on or prior to the Current Interest Commencement Date, have the characteristics of Capital Appreciation Bonds and, after the Current Interest Commencement Date, have the characteristics of Current Interest Bonds, in each case with such further terms and conditions as may be designated therefor in the Supplemental Indenture authorizing such Bonds.

**Corporate Trust Office** means the office of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate trust business shall be principally administered, or such other address as the Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the District, or the principal corporate trust office of any successor Trustee (or such other address as such successor Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the District).

**Costs of Issuance** means any item of expense directly or indirectly payable or reimbursable by the District and related to the authorization, sale, or issuance of Bonds, including, but not limited to, underwriting fees, discounts and expenses, rating agency fees, legal fees, accounting fees, financial advisory fees, trustee and paying agent fees, collection agent fees, bond insurance and other credit enhancement fees, liquidity enhancement fees, printing costs and expenses.

**Costs of Issuance Account** means the Costs of Issuance Account established pursuant to the Indenture.

**Council** means the Council of the District of Columbia.

**Credit Facility** means each irrevocable letter of credit, bond insurance policy, surety bond, loan agreement, or other agreement, facility or insurance or guaranty arrangement issued or extended by a bank, a trust company, a national banking association, a state chartered bank, or any other entity approved by the District, pursuant to which the District is entitled to obtain moneys to pay, in the Currency in which the Bonds of such Series are payable, the principal or Redemption Price of Bonds due in accordance with their terms plus accrued interest thereon to the date of payment thereof in accordance herewith and with the Supplemental Indenture authorizing such Bonds, whether or not the District is in default under the Indenture; provided, that use of a Credit Facility shall not result, at the time of delivery of the Credit Facility, in a reduction in the Rating of any Bonds Outstanding; and provided further, that a substitute Credit Facility may be obtained from time to time (i) which shall contain the same material terms as set forth in the Credit Facility for which substitution is made, and (ii) will not, in and of itself, result in a Rating of the related Bonds lower than those which then prevailed.

**Credit Facility Provider** means the Person that has executed a Credit Facility with the District, or otherwise has provided a Credit Facility at the request of the District, for the benefit of any of the Bonds.

**Currency** means Dollars or Foreign Currency or Currency Unit.

**Currency Unit** means a composite currency or currency unit the value of which is determined by reference to the value of the currencies of any group of countries.

**Current Interest Bonds** means Bonds that bear interest which is not compounded but is payable on a current basis on established dates prior to maturity.

**Current Interest Commencement Date** means the date established prior to the issuance of each Series of Convertible Capital Appreciation Bonds, on which the semiannual compounding of interest ceases and on and after such date interest is payable currently on the Compounded Amounts on the next ensuing interest payment dates.

**Debt** means, collectively, Senior Debt and Subordinate Debt.

**Debt Service Fund** means the Fund by that name established by the Indenture.

**Defeasance Obligations** means any of the following which are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof, if and to the extent the same are at the time legal for the investment of the District's funds:

- (i) Government Obligations; and
- (ii) Defeased Municipal Obligations.

**Defeased Municipal Obligations** means any bonds or other obligations of any state or territory of the United States of America, of the District, or of any agency, instrumentality or local governmental unit of any such state or territory or District which are not callable at the option of the obligor prior to maturity or as to which irrevocable instructions have been given by the obligor to call on the date specified in the notice; and

(i) which are rated, based on an irrevocable escrow account or fund (the "escrow"), in the highest Rating category of any Rating Agency; or

(ii) (a) which are fully secured as to principal, interest and redemption premium, if any, by an escrow consisting only of cash or Government Obligations, which escrow may be applied only to the payment of such principal and interest and redemption premium, if any, on such bonds or other obligations on the maturity date or dates thereof or the specified redemption date or dates pursuant to such irrevocable instructions, as appropriate, and (b) which escrow is sufficient, as verified by a nationally recognized independent certified public accountant, or other nationally recognized verification agent, to pay principal and interest and redemption premium, if any, on the bonds or other obligations described in this paragraph on the maturity date or dates specified in the irrevocable instructions referred to above, as appropriate.

**District** means the District of Columbia.

**Dollar** means a dollar or other equivalent unit in such coin or currency of the United States as at the time of payment is legal tender for the payment of public and private debts.

**Eighteenth Supplemental Indenture** means the Eighteenth Supplemental Indenture of Trust dated as of September 1, 2014, between the District and the Trustee, which supplements the Master Indenture, and authorizes and secures the Series 2014A Bonds.

**Event of Default** shall have the meaning described under the heading “Events of Default” below.

**Federal Agency Obligations** means bonds, notes, debentures, or other obligations or securities issued by an “AAA” (or equivalent) rated federal government agency or instrumentality.

**Financing Costs** means, with respect to any Bonds, all Costs of Issuance and any other fees, discounts, expenses and costs related to structuring, issuing, securing, marketing and maintaining the Bonds, including, without limitation, capitalized interest, all costs incurred by the District with respect to the Financing Documents, not otherwise provided for payment thereof under the Indenture, redemption premiums and other costs of redemption.

**Financing Documents** means the documents other than Closing Documents that relate to the financing or refinancing of transactions to be effected through the issuance, sale, and delivery of any Series of the Bonds, including contracts or agreements for an escrow agent, Trustee, Collection Agent, registrar, paying agent, underwriting, legal services, accounting, financial advisory services, bond insurance or other credit enhancement or liquidity agreements, printing, or placement of any investment or obligation or program of investment, including any offering document, contract based on interest rate, currency, cash flow, or other basis, including Qualified Hedges, and any required supplements to any such documents.

**Fiscal Year** means the fiscal year of the District beginning October 1 of each calendar year.

**Fitch** means Fitch Ratings, and its successors and assigns.

**Fixed Tender Bond** means any Bond, not constituting an Adjustable Rate Bond, which by its terms must be tendered by the Bondholder thereof for purchase by or for the account of the District prior to the stated maturity thereof or for purchase thereof.

**Foreign Currency** means a currency issued by the government of any country other than the United States or a composite currency or currency unit the value of which is determined by reference to the values of the currencies of any group of countries.

**Fund** or **Funds** means the Income Tax Secured Bond Fund established by the Act and any fund or funds, as the case may be, established and created pursuant to the Indenture or account or accounts thereof, but does not include any escrow or other fund or account established or created pursuant to the provisions of the Indenture relating to the defeasance of Bonds.

**General Fund** means that fund of the District created by §450 of the Home Rule Act.

**Government Obligations** means direct obligations of, or obligations the principal of and the interest on which are unconditionally guaranteed by, the United States of America and which are entitled to the full faith and credit thereof.

**Home Rule Act** means the District of Columbia Home Rule Act, approved as of December 24, 1973, as amended (P.L. 93-198; 87 Stat. 774; D.C. Official Code §§ 1-201.01 *et seq.*).

**Income Tax** means the income tax imposed on individuals pursuant to Section 47-1806.03 of the D.C. Official Code, as amended.

**Income Tax Secured Bond Fund** means the fund established pursuant to Section 47-340.27 of the D.C. Official Code and the Act, and maintained under the Indenture, which includes a Collection Account and a Revenue Account.

**Indenture** means the Master Indenture of Trust, dated as of March 1, 2009, by and between the District and the Trustee, as amended or supplemented from time to time.

**Interest Account** means the Interest Account established in the Debt Service Fund by the Indenture.

**Interest Payment Date** means each June 1 and December 1.

**Investment Obligations** means and includes any of the following securities, if and to the extent the same are at the time legal for investment of District funds:

- (i) Government Obligations;
- (ii) Federal Agency Obligations;
- (iii) Defeased Municipal Obligations;
- (iv) Municipal Obligations;
- (v) Prime commercial paper of a corporation incorporated under the laws of any state of the United States of America, rated “P-1”, “A-1” or “F1” by at least two of Moody’s, Standard & Poor’s and Fitch, respectively;
- (vi) Banker’s acceptances issued by a domestic bank or a federally chartered domestic office of a foreign bank, which are eligible for purchase by the Federal Reserve System, rated “P 1”, “A 1” or “F1” by Moody’s, Standard & Poor’s or Fitch, respectively;
- (vii) Shares in diversified open-end, no load investment funds, provided such funds are registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940, which is a money market mutual fund, which has been rated “AAAm” or “AAAm-G” or the equivalent by Moody’s, Standard & Poor’s or Fitch, and such fund cannot hold investments not permitted pursuant to the District’s Investment Policy;
- (viii) Federally insured or collateralized certificates of deposit issued by banks (which may include the Trustee) which are state chartered banks, federally chartered banks or foreign banks with domestic offices. Collateralized certificates of deposit shall be collateralized by obligations described in clause (i) or (ii) above, which such obligations at all times have a market value (exclusive of accrued interest) at least equal to a minimum of one hundred and two percent (102%) of such bank deposits so secured, including interest;
- (ix) Repurchase agreements relating to securities of the type specified in clauses (i) and (ii) above, provided that such securities in an amount at least equal to a market value at all times of at least one hundred and two percent (102%) of the amount of the agreements shall be delivered as security for such agreements to the account of the Trustee to be held therein during the term of the agreements; and
- (x) Any other obligations conforming to any District guidelines for investment, including its Investment Policy, so long as such obligations are rated at least in the two highest Rating Categories of each of the Rating Agencies.

**Investment Policy** means such policy adopted by the Chief Financial Officer and the Treasurer, as such policy may be modified from time to time.

**Legal Maximum Interest Rate** means the highest rate of interest or highest true interest cost that by law may be borne by any Bonds.

**Liquidity Facility** means an irrevocable letter of credit, surety bond, loan agreement, Standby Purchase Agreement, line of credit or other agreement or arrangement issued or extended by a bank, a trust company, a national banking association, state chartered bank or other entity approved by the District, pursuant to which the District is entitled to obtain moneys upon the terms and conditions contained therein for the purchase or redemption of Bonds tendered for purchase or redemption in accordance with the terms hereof and of the Supplemental Indenture authorizing such Bond; provided, that the use of the Liquidity Facility shall not result, at the time of delivery of the Liquidity Facility, in a reduction in the Rating of any Bonds Outstanding; and provided further that a substitute Liquidity Facility (A) may be obtained from time to time (i) which shall contain the same material terms as set forth in the Liquidity Facility for which substitution is made, and (ii) will not, in and of itself, result in a Rating of the related Bonds lower than those which then prevailed, and (B) such a substitute Liquidity Facility must be obtained at any time to replace the then existing Liquidity Facility in the event that the Rating of the related Bonds is or is expected, at the sole determination of the Chief Financial Officer of the District, to be reduced as a result of rating activity related to the existing Liquidity Facility.

**Liquidity Facility Provider** means the Person that has executed a Liquidity Facility with the District, or otherwise has provided a Liquidity Facility at the request of the District, for the benefit of any of the Bonds.

**Master Indenture** means the Master Indenture of Trust, dated as of March 1, 2009, by and between the District and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., as Trustee, as amended or supplemented from time to time.

**Maturity Amount** means the Compounded Amount of any Capital Appreciation Bond as of the stated maturity thereof.

**Maximum Annual Debt Service** means the maximum Annual Debt Service with respect to any specified indebtedness for any Fiscal Year during the term of such indebtedness.

**Moody's** means Moody's Investors Service, and its successors and assigns.

**Municipal Obligations** means bonds, notes and other indebtedness of any state or local government which are rated in either of the two highest rating categories (without regard to gradation) by Moody's, Standard & Poor's or Fitch, respectively.

**Obligations** means all Senior Obligations and all Subordinate Obligations.

**Opinion of Bond Counsel** means an opinion signed by a firm or firms of attorneys of recognized standing in the field of law relating to municipal bonds designated as bond counsel from time to time by the Chief Financial Officer and satisfactory to the Trustee.

**Opinion of Counsel** means an opinion signed by an attorney or firm of attorneys of recognized standing (who may be counsel to the District) selected by the District.

**Option Bond** means any Bond which by its terms may be tendered by and, at the option of the Bondholder thereof, for redemption by the District prior to the stated maturity thereof or for purchase thereof, or the maturity of which may be extended by and at the option of the Bondholder thereof.

**Original Principal Amount** means the Compounded Amount of any Capital Appreciation Bond as of the date of original issuance, as set forth in the applicable Supplemental Indenture.

**Outstanding**, when used with reference to the Bonds as a whole or the Bonds of a Series, means, as of any date, the Bonds or Bonds of such Series, as the case may be, theretofore or thereupon being delivered and issued under the provisions of the Indenture, except:

(i) any Bonds canceled by or surrendered for cancellation to the Trustee at or prior to such date;

(ii) Bonds for the payment or redemption of which moneys or Defeasance Obligations equal to the principal amount or Redemption Price thereof, as the case may be, with interest to the date of maturity or redemption date, shall be held by the Trustee in trust (whether at or prior to the maturity or redemption date), provided that if such Bonds are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption shall have been given as provided in the Indenture or provision shall have been made for the giving of such notice, and provided further that if such notice is conditional, it is no longer subject to rescission;

(iii) Bonds deemed to have been paid as provided in the Section of the Indenture relating to defeasance of Bonds;

(iv) Bonds in lieu of or in substitution for which other Bonds shall have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to the Indenture;

(v) Option Bonds tendered or deemed tendered in accordance with the provisions of the Supplemental Indenture authorizing such Bonds on the applicable tender date, if the purchase price thereof and interest thereon shall have been paid or amounts are available and set aside for such payment as provided in such Supplemental Indenture, except to the extent such tendered Option Bonds are held by the District or a Credit Facility Provider or a Liquidity Facility Provider and/or thereafter may be resold pursuant to the terms thereof and of such Supplemental Indenture; and

(vi) as may be provided with respect to such Bonds by the Supplemental Indenture authorizing such Bonds;

provided, however, that in determining whether the Bondholders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Bonds have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver, Bonds owned by the District shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding, except that, in determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver, only Bonds which an authorized representative of the Trustee actually knows to be so owned shall be so disregarded. Bonds so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Bonds and that the pledgee is not the District.

In determining whether Bondholders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Bonds have given any requisite demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder, the principal amount of a Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond or a Capital Appreciation Bond that shall be deemed

Outstanding for such purposes shall be the Compounded Amount thereof except as otherwise provided in the Master Indenture.

**Outstanding Debt** means any tax-supported indebtedness of the District outstanding at any time, including any outstanding general obligation bonds and bond anticipation notes issued by the District, and certificates of participation issued on behalf of the District, but, unless expressly authorized by Council resolution, the term “Outstanding Debt” shall not include tax increment financing, payment in lieu of taxation debt, nor shall such term include revenue anticipation notes.

**Paying Agent** means any paying agent for the Bonds of any Series, and its successor or successors and any other corporation which may be substituted in its place pursuant to the Indenture.

**Person or Persons** means an individual, partnership, limited liability partnership, corporation, limited liability company, trust, unincorporated organization, a government or agency or political subdivision or branch thereof.

**Principal Account** means the Principal Account established in the Debt Service Fund by the Indenture.

**Principal Installment** means, as of any date with respect to any Series, so long as any Bonds of such Series are Outstanding, the sum of (i) the principal amount and Compounded Amount (but only at the maturity of such Bonds unless otherwise provided in the Master Indenture) of Bonds of such Series (including the principal amount of Option Bonds tendered for payment and not purchased) due (or so tendered for payment and not purchased) on such date for which no Sinking Fund Installments have been established, and (ii) the unsatisfied balance (determined as provided in the Indenture) of any Sinking Fund Installments due on such date for Bonds of such Series, together with the premiums, if any, payable upon the redemption of such Bonds by application of such Sinking Fund Installments.

**Program** means a financing program identified in a Supplemental Indenture, including but not limited to a bond anticipation note or commercial paper program, (a) which is authorized and the terms thereof approved by a resolution adopted by the District and the items required under the Indenture have been filed with the Trustee, (b) wherein the District has authorized the issuance, from time to time, of notes, commercial paper or other indebtedness in an authorized amount, and (c) the authorized amount of which has met the additional Bonds test set forth in the Master Indenture and the Outstanding amount of which may vary from time to time, but not exceed the authorized amount.

**Qualified Hedge** means, if and to the extent from time to time permitted by law, (A) (i) any financial arrangement (a) which is entered into by the District with an entity that is a Qualified Hedge Provider at the time the arrangement is entered into, (b) which is a cap, floor or collar, forward rate, future rate, swap (such swap may be based on an amount equal either to the principal amount of such Bonds as may be designated or a notional principal amount relating to all or a portion of the principal amount of such Bonds), asset, index, Currency, price or market-linked transaction or agreement, other exchange or rate protection transaction agreement, other similar transaction (however designated), or any combination thereof, or any option with respect to any of the foregoing, executed by the District, and (c) which has been designated as a Qualified Hedge with respect to such Bonds in a written determination signed by an Authorized Representative and delivered to the Trustee, and (ii) any Liquidity Facility, including any letter of credit, line of credit, policy of insurance, surety bond, guarantee or similar instrument securing the obligations of the District under any financial arrangement described in clause (i) above; and (B) or any Qualified Hedge entered into to replace the then existing Qualified Hedge in the event that the Rating of the related Bonds is or is expected, at the sole determination of the Chief Financial Officer of the District, to be reduced as a result of credit rating activity related to the existing Qualified Hedge.

**Qualified Hedge Provider** means (i) a Person whose long-term obligations, other unsecured long-term obligations, financial program rating, counterparty rating, or claims paying ability are rated, or whose payment obligations under an interest rate exchange agreement are guaranteed by an entity whose long-term debt obligations, other unsecured long term obligations, financial program rating, counterparty rating, or claims paying ability, are rated, at the time of the execution of such Qualified Hedge, either (a) at least as high as the third highest Rating Category of each Rating Agency, but in no event lower than any Rating Category designated by any such Rating Agency for the Bonds, subject to such Qualified Hedge (without reference to bond insurance, if any), or (b) any such lower Rating Categories which each such Rating Agency indicates in writing to the District and the Trustee will not, by itself, result in a reduction or withdrawal of its Rating (without reference to bond insurance, if any) on the Outstanding Bonds, and (ii) a Person whose payment obligations under an interest rate exchange agreement are subject to collateralization requirements that, as evidenced in writing to the District and the Trustee by each Rating Agency, will not, by itself, result in a reduction or withdrawal of its Rating (without reference to bond insurance, if any) on the Outstanding Bonds.

**Rating** means a rating published by a Rating Agency with respect to any or all Bonds. Any provision of the Indenture that specifies that an action may not be taken if it shall result in a reduction, suspension or withdrawal of the Rating of the Bonds, with respect to any Bonds that are the subject of a Credit Facility, means the Rating of such Bonds without taking into account the credit enhancement provided by such Credit Facility.

**Rating Agency** means each nationally recognized statistical rating organization then maintaining a rating on the Bonds at the request of the District.

**Rating Category** means one of the generic rating categories of any Rating Agency without regard to any refinement or gradation of such rating by a numerical modifier or otherwise.

**Rebate Account** means the Rebate Account of the Rebate Fund established pursuant to the Master Indenture.

**Rebate Amount** means, with respect to a Series of Bonds, the amount computed as described in the Tax Certificate.

**Rebate Fund** means the Fund by that name established by the Master Indenture.

**Redemption Account** means the Redemption Account of the Redemption Fund established pursuant to the Master Indenture.

**Redemption Fund** means the Fund by that name established by the Master Indenture.

**Redemption Price** means, when used with respect to a Bond (other than a Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond or a Capital Appreciation Bond), or a portion thereof to be redeemed, the principal amount of such Bond or such portion thereof plus the applicable premium, if any, payable upon redemption thereof, pursuant to the Indenture and the applicable Supplemental Indenture, but, when used with respect to a Convertible Capital Appreciation Bond or a Capital Appreciation Bond, "Redemption Price" means the Compounded Amount on the date of redemption of such Bond or portion thereof plus the applicable premium, if any.

**Refunding Bonds** means all Bonds authenticated and delivered on original issuance pursuant to the Indenture or thereafter authenticated and delivered in lieu of or in substitution for any such Bonds issued pursuant to the Indenture and the applicable Supplemental Indenture.

**Registrar** means the District or any bank, trust company, or national banking association designated to serve in this capacity by the Chief Financial Officer, and may be the Trustee.

**Resolution** means a resolution of the Council authorizing the issuance of one or more Series of Bonds.

**Revenue Account** means the Revenue Account of the Income Tax Secured Bond Fund established by the Master Indenture.

**Revenues** means the following, collectively, except as otherwise may be provided with respect to a Series of Bonds by the Supplemental Indenture authorizing such Series:

1. All Available Tax Revenues received by the Collection Agent, the Trustee or the District.

2. With respect to any particular Bonds, the proceeds of any draw on or payment under any Credit Facility which is intended for the payment of such Bonds, but only for purposes of such payment and not for purposes of the additional Bonds test or other purposes of the Indenture.

3. Any amounts received by the District pursuant to a Qualified Hedge after giving effect to any netting of amounts payable by the parties thereunder.

4. Income and interest earned and gains realized in excess of losses suffered by any Fund (other than the Rebate Fund), Account (other than any Account in the Rebate Fund) or Subaccount held by the Trustee under the terms of the Indenture.

5. Any other revenues, fees, charges, surcharges, rents, proceeds or other income and receipts received by or on behalf of the District or by the Trustee, lawfully available for the purposes of the Indenture in accordance with the Act and deposited by or on behalf of the District or by the Trustee in any Fund (other than the Rebate Fund), Account (other than the Costs of Issuance Account and the Bond Proceeds Account) or Subaccount (other than any Subaccount in the Costs of Issuance Account and the Bond Proceeds Account) held by the Trustee under the terms of the Indenture, including any payments or collections received pursuant to enforcement actions, received from bankruptcy trustees or through the Bankruptcy Courts, received as a result of garnished wages, received as collections of tax levies, including the release of liens at real estate closings, received as a result of closures of estates, received as a result of the sales of businesses or involving business licenses, and other collection activities as shall be collected by the Chief Financial Officer and forwarded to the Collection Agent or deposited in the Income Tax Secured Bond Fund upon reconciliation of accounts.

**Senior Bonds** means the Bonds, Additional Bonds, notes, or other obligations, including refunding bonds, notes, bond anticipation notes, commercial paper and other obligations, in one or more series, issued pursuant to the Master Indenture and designated as such. Senior Bonds constitute “Parity Bonds” as defined in the Act.

**Senior Debt** means Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations.

**Senior Hedge Obligations** means, as allocated to each Series of Senior Bonds pursuant to the terms of the related Supplemental Indenture, fixed and scheduled payments by the District under

Qualified Hedges. Senior Hedge Obligations shall not include, among other things, any costs, indemnities, termination payments or similar non-recurring amounts, or any amortization of any thereof.

**Senior Obligations** means, collectively, all Senior Reimbursement Obligations and Senior Hedge Obligations.

**Senior Reimbursement Obligations** means, as allocated to each Series of Senior Bonds pursuant to the terms of the related Supplemental Indenture, fixed and scheduled payments due from the District to any Credit Facility Provider or any Liquidity Facility Provider, as provided by the Indenture. Senior Reimbursement Obligations may include, among other things, reimbursements of direct-pay letters of credit to be drawn on each principal and/or interest payment date.

**Serial Bonds** means Bonds which have no Sinking Fund Installments.

**Series** means all of the Bonds authenticated and delivered on original issuance identified pursuant to the Supplemental Indenture as a separate series of Bonds, and any Bonds thereafter authenticated and delivered in lieu of or in substitution therefor pursuant to the Indenture, regardless of variations in maturities, principal amount, interest rate or other provisions.

**Series 2014A Bonds** means the District's Income Tax Secured Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2014A, authorized to be issued pursuant to the Eighteenth Supplemental Indenture.

**Short Term/Demand Obligations** means Option Bonds, Fixed Tender Bonds, bond anticipation notes, and commercial paper, or any other Series of Bonds issued pursuant to the Indenture, the payment of principal of which is either (a) payable on demand by or at the option of the Holder at a time sooner than a date on which such principal is deemed to be payable for purposes of computing Annual Debt Service, or (b) scheduled to be payable within one year from the date of issuance and is contemplated to be refinanced for a specified period or term either (i) through the issuance of additional Short-Term/Demand Obligations pursuant to a commercial paper, auction Bond or other similar Program, or (ii) through the issuance of long-term Bonds pursuant to a bond anticipation note or similar Program.

**Sinking Fund Installment** means, when used with respect to any Series of Bonds, the amount of principal or Compounded Amount, as the case may be, due prior to maturity on Bonds of a given maturity on any particular due date as specified in the Supplemental Indenture pursuant to which such Series was issued.

**Standard & Poor's** means Standard & Poor's Ratings Services, a division of The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc., and its successors and assigns.

**Standby Purchase Agreement** means an agreement by and between the District and another Person pursuant to which such Person is obligated to purchase Option Bonds or Fixed Tender Bonds tendered for purchase.

**Standby Purchase Agreement Provider** means that party that has entered into a Standby Purchase Agreement with the District.

**Subaccount** or **Subaccounts** means any subaccount or subaccounts, as the case may be, established or created pursuant to the Indenture, including but not limited to any subaccount of a subaccount, that does not include any escrow or other fund or account established or created pursuant to the provisions of the Indenture relating to the defeasance of Bonds.

**Subordinate Bonds** means Bonds, notes, or other obligations, including refunding bonds, notes, bond anticipation notes, commercial paper and other obligations, in one or more series, issued pursuant to the Master Indenture and designated as such.

**Subordinate Debt** means Subordinate Bonds and Subordinate Obligations.

**Subordinate Obligations** means, collectively, all Subordinate Reimbursement Obligations and Subordinate Hedge Obligations.

**Subordinate Hedge Obligations** means fixed and scheduled payments by the District under Qualified Hedges. Subordinate Hedge Obligations shall not include, among other things, any costs, indemnities, termination payments or similar non recurring amounts, or any amortization of any thereof, as allocated to each Series of Subordinate Bonds pursuant to the terms of the related Supplemental Indenture.

**Subordinate Reimbursement Obligations** means, as allocated to each Series of Subordinate Bonds pursuant to the terms of the related Supplemental Indenture, fixed and scheduled payments due from the District to any Credit Facility Provider or any Liquidity Facility Provider, as provided by the Indenture. Subordinate Reimbursement Obligations shall include, among other things, reimbursements of direct-pay letters of credit to be drawn on each principal and/or interest payment date.

**Supplemental Indenture** means any indenture supplemental to or amendatory of the Master Indenture or any Supplemental Indenture in accordance with the Master Indenture.

**Taxable Bonds** means Bonds of a Series the interest on which is included in gross income for federal income tax purposes.

**Tax Certificate** means the document executed by the District with respect to each Series of Bonds containing representations and certifications to support the exclusion of the interest on such Bonds under the Code.

**Tax Exempt Bonds** means Bonds of a Series the interest on which, in the opinion of Bond Counsel, on the date of original issuance thereof, is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes.

**Term Bonds** means Bonds having a single stated maturity date for which Sinking Fund Installments are specified in a Supplemental Indenture.

**Treasurer** means the Treasurer of the District of Columbia.

**Trust Estate** means the following property:

- (i) All Revenues pledged pursuant to the Master Indenture.
- (ii) All right, title and interest of the District in and to Revenues, and all rights to receive the same by the Act including all of its right, title, and interest now owned or later acquired in and to the Available Tax Revenues, whether received or to be received, or held at the time, by a Collection Agent, custodian, or escrow agent or by District officials.
- (iii) Amounts on deposit from time to time, and any investment earnings thereon, in the Income Tax Secured Bond Fund, Funds (other than the Rebate Fund), Accounts (other than

the Costs of Issuance Account and the Bond Proceeds Account) or Subaccounts (other than any Subaccount in the Costs of Issuance Account and the Bond Proceeds Account), held by the Trustee, and moneys and securities from time to time held by the Trustee under the terms of the Indenture, subject to the provisions of the Indenture permitting the application thereof for the purposes and on the terms and conditions set forth therein.

(iv) All right, title and interest of the District owned or hereafter acquired in and to proceeds from the sale of Bonds issued under the Master Indenture and required to be deposited in the Capitalized Interest Account (but excluding the Bond Proceeds Account of the Bond Proceeds Fund and the Costs of Issuance Account and the Capital Project Fund held by the District) pursuant to the provisions of the Indenture (except as limited as provided in the Master Indenture) and all right, title, and interest in and to the investments held in such funds (except as limited as provided in the Master Indenture) pursuant to the provisions of the Indenture.

(v) Any and all other property of any kind from time to time hereafter by delivery or by writing specifically conveyed, pledged, assigned or transferred, as and for additional security hereunder for the Bonds and the Obligations, by the District or by anyone on its behalf or with its written consent in favor of the Trustee, which is authorized by the Indenture to receive any and all such property at any and all times and to hold and apply the same subject to the terms of the Indenture.

(vi) Any and all cash and non-cash proceeds, products, rents, and profits from any of the Trust Estate described in paragraphs (i) through (v) above, including, without limitation, those from the sale, exchange, transfer, collection, loss, damage, disposition, substitution or replacement of any of the foregoing.

**Trustee** means the bank, trust company or national banking association appointed by the Chief Financial Officer pursuant to the Indenture to act as trustee thereunder, and its successor or successors and any other bank, trust company or national banking association which may at any time be substituted in its place pursuant to the provisions of the Indenture.

## Summary of Certain Provisions of the Master Indenture

*The following is a general summary of certain provisions of the Master Indenture as presently in effect. The summary does not purport to be comprehensive or definitive and is subject to all of the terms and provisions of the Master Indenture, to which reference is hereby made.*

### **The Pledge**

The Trust Estate, subject to the Section of the Indenture relating to compensating the Trustee, is pledged to the Trustee for the payment and as security for the payment of the Principal Installments and Redemption Price of and interest on the Bonds and payments due under any Credit Facilities, Liquidity Facilities and/or Qualified Hedges to the extent provided by a Supplemental Indenture, in each case in accordance with their terms and the provisions of the Indenture and subject to the provisions of the Indenture permitting the application of the Trust Estate for the purposes and on the terms and conditions set forth in the Indenture and in each case subject to the provisions regarding priority of payment as between Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations and Subordinate Bonds and Subordinate Obligations. Nothing contained in the Indenture shall prevent (i) a Credit Facility, Liquidity Facility, or Qualified Hedge from being provided with respect to any particular Bonds and not others, (ii) different reserves being provided with respect to Bonds and other Bonds or with respect to particular Bonds than are provided for other Bonds, or (iii) different reserves being provided with respect to particular Senior Obligations than are provided for other Senior Obligations, or being provided with respect to particular Subordinate Obligations than are provided for other Subordinate Obligations. To the fullest extent provided by the Act and other applicable law, this pledge shall be valid and binding, and the Trust Estate shall immediately be subject to the lien of this pledge, without any physical delivery thereof or further act, the lien of this pledge shall be valid and binding as against all parties having claims of any kind in tort, contract or otherwise against the District without regard to whether such parties have notice thereof, and a security interest in the Trust Estate shall be valid, binding and perfected whether or not any statement, document, or instrument relating to the security interest is recorded or filed.

Pursuant to the Act, the Available Tax Revenues shall constitute “dedicated taxes and fees” and “available revenues” within the meaning of section 490(n) of the Home Rule Act. As such, the holders of the Bonds shall have a first lien on and pledge of the Available Tax Revenues superior to that of any other person, including holders of general obligation bonds or notes secured by the full faith and credit of the District pursuant to section 482 of the Home Rule Act.

### **Establishment of Fund and Accounts**

The Act creates the Income Tax Secured Bond Fund as a non-lapsing special fund separate and apart from the General Fund of the District, which shall be held and administered by the Trustee, except for the Collection Account which shall be held and administered by the Collection Agent as agent for the Trustee. In addition, the following Funds and Accounts which shall be held and administered by the Trustee are established:

- (i) Bond Proceeds Fund which shall include:
  - (a) Costs of Issuance Account;
  - (b) Capitalized Interest Account; and
  - (c) Bond Proceeds Account.

- (ii) Income Tax Secured Bond Fund which shall include:
  - (a) Collection Account; and
  - (b) Revenue Account.
- (iii) Debt Service Fund which shall include:
  - (a) Accumulation Account, which shall contain therein a Subaccount for each Series of Bonds;
  - (b) Principal Account, which shall contain therein a Subaccount for each Series of Bonds; and
  - (c) Interest Account, which shall contain therein a Subaccount for each Series of Bonds.
- (iv) Redemption Fund, which shall include a Redemption Account for each Series of Bonds.
- (v) Rebate Fund, which shall include a Rebate Account for each Series of Bonds or for more than one Series of Bonds that are treated as a single issue of bonds under the Code as specified in the applicable Tax Certificate.

The District may establish and create such other Accounts in the Funds, or such other Subaccounts in any Account, as may be authorized pursuant to any Supplemental Indenture, including a Supplemental Indenture authorizing a Series of Bonds, and deposit therein such amounts as may from time to time be held for the credit of any Account or Subaccount.

Amounts held by the Trustee at any time in the Funds or any Accounts and Subaccounts established pursuant to the Indenture, as the case may be, shall be held in trust in separate accounts and subaccounts of the District and shall be applied only in accordance with the provisions of the Indenture, the Resolution and the Act.

### **Bond Proceeds Fund**

#### *Costs of Issuance Account*

If determined by the District in connection with the issuance of a Series of Bonds, there shall be deposited in the Costs of Issuance Account amounts, if any, determined to be deposited therein pursuant to a Supplemental Indenture. If the District shall not have determined, as evidenced by written direction to the Trustee, to deposit amounts in a Costs of Issuance Account, such amounts if any, determined to be disbursed for Costs of Issuance pursuant to a Supplemental Indenture shall be disbursed upon issuance of a Series of Bonds to such Persons as directed in writing to the Trustee by the District.

Amounts on deposit in the Costs of Issuance Account or any Subaccount thereof, shall be applied to the payment of Costs of Issuance of Bonds, upon written certification by an Authorized Representative:

- (i) setting forth the amount to be paid, the person or persons to whom such payment is to be made (which may be or include the District) and, in reasonable detail, the purpose of such withdrawal; and

(ii) stating that the amount to be withdrawn from the Costs of Issuance Account or any Subaccount thereof is a proper charge thereon and that such charge has not been the basis of any previous withdrawal.

Any amounts on deposit in the Costs of Issuance Account or any Subaccount thereof and determined to be no longer required, to pay Costs of Issuance of a Series of Bonds shall be transferred to the District for deposit into the Capital Project Fund.

*Capitalized Interest Account*

There shall be deposited in the Capitalized Interest Account amounts, if any, determined to be deposited therein pursuant to the requirements of a Supplemental Indenture containing the information required to be set forth by the Master Indenture and authorizing the issuance of a Series of Bonds.

Amounts on deposit in the Capitalized Interest Account or any Subaccount thereof shall be transferred to the Interest Account in the Debt Service Fund on or prior to the Business Day preceding each Interest Payment Date in accordance with the requirements of the Supplemental Indenture or Supplemental Indentures authorizing such deposits to be made and providing for the application of such deposits.

Any amounts on deposit in the Capitalized Interest Account or any Subaccount thereof and no longer required, to pay interest on a Series of Bonds, shall be transferred to the District for deposit in the Capital Project Fund.

In the event of the refunding of any Bonds, the District may withdraw from the Capitalized Interest Account related to the Bonds to be refunded all or any portion of amounts accumulated therein with respect to the Bonds to be refunded and deposit such amounts as provided in a written direction from the District; provided, however, that such withdrawal shall not be made unless immediately thereafter the Bonds being refunded shall be deemed to have been paid pursuant to the Master Indenture.

*Bond Proceeds Account*

There shall be deposited in the Bond Proceeds Account the amount of bond proceeds which are required to be deposited therein pursuant to the Master Indenture, any Supplemental Indenture, and any other amounts available therefor under the Indenture and determined by the District to be deposited therein from time to time, all of which amounts shall be immediately transferred to the District for deposit in the Capital Project Fund.

Any amount remaining in the Bond Proceeds Account and not required for application in accordance with the applicable Supplemental Indenture shall be deposited in (A) the Debt Service Fund and/or (B) the Redemption Fund, in each case as shall be directed in writing by the District; provided, however, in the case of proceeds of a Series of Tax Exempt Bonds, that prior to any deposit to the Debt Service Fund or the Redemption Fund, the District and the Trustee shall have received an Opinion of Bond Counsel to the effect that such deposit is authorized or permitted to be made pursuant to the Indenture and that such deposit will not adversely affect the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from gross income for Federal income tax purposes.

## **Income Tax Secured Bond Fund**

All Available Tax Revenues shall be deposited upon receipt in the Collection Account maintained by the Collection Agent.

Each Business Day, all Available Tax Revenues received from the Collection Agent shall be deposited by the Trustee into the Revenue Account held under the Income Tax Secured Bond Fund. All other Revenues, upon receipt by the Trustee, shall be deposited into the Revenue Account; provided, however, that the proceeds of any draw on or payment under any Credit Facility which is intended for the payment of a Bond may be applied directly to such payment or deposited directly to the Debt Service Fund for such purpose. In addition, there shall be deposited in the Revenue Account all other amounts required by the Indenture to be so deposited. Amounts on deposit from time to time in the Revenue Account shall be withdrawn and transferred on a daily basis in the following order of priority:

FIRST: Unless a Supplemental Indenture related to a Series of Bonds provides otherwise with respect to the Series of Bonds, to the Accumulation Account established for the Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations all amounts until the amounts on deposit in all such accounts related to all Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations shall equal: (A) commencing on April 1 of each Fiscal Year and on each day thereafter in such month until 1/3 of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year are on deposit therein, 1/3 of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year, (B) commencing on May 1 of each Fiscal Year and on each day thereafter in such month until 2/3 of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year are on deposit therein, 2/3 of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year, and (C) commencing on June 1 of each Fiscal Year and on each day thereafter in such month and, if necessary, in each succeeding month until 100% of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year are on deposit in the Accumulation Account, 100% of the amounts set forth in the following clauses (i) and (ii) for the next ensuing Fiscal Year (and to the extent necessary, until the amounts on deposit equal any debt service requirements relating to Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations for a prior Fiscal Year that have not been satisfied): (i) the aggregate of the Principal Installments of such Senior Bonds, and principal component of Senior Obligations, due during the next ensuing Fiscal Year, plus (ii) the aggregate interest due on such Senior Bonds and the interest component of Senior Obligations, due during the next ensuing Fiscal Year, and, for Adjustable Rate Bonds on a parity with Senior Bonds, based on the Assumed Interest Rate.

SECOND: To pay or provide for the payment of amounts due and payable under Credit Facilities, Liquidity Facilities and Qualified Hedges not otherwise required to be funded pursuant to paragraph FIRST above, until such amounts shall be fully paid or otherwise provided for from this or any other source.

THIRD: To the payment of Subordinate Bonds and Subordinate Obligations, if any, the terms of which shall be set forth in a Supplemental Indenture

FOURTH: Upon the written direction by the District, the Trustee, may transfer:

- (i) to the Redemption Fund, amounts to be used to redeem Bonds; or
- (ii) to the Redemption Fund, or the appropriate Fund or Account established pursuant to a Supplemental Indenture, amounts to be used to purchase Bonds in accordance with the Master Indenture or as provided pursuant to a Supplemental Indenture.

FIFTH: As soon as practicable, released to the District for deposit to the unrestricted balance of the General Fund of the District, free and clear of the lien of the Indenture, to be applied for any lawful purpose of the District.

Purchases of Bonds with amounts in the Revenue Account shall be made upon the written direction of an Authorized Representative, with or without advertisement and with or without notice to other Bondholders. Such purchases shall be made at such price or prices as determined by such written instructions. If Sinking Fund Installments have been established for the maturities of Bonds purchased by the District, then the Trustee, upon written instructions from an Authorized Representative, shall credit the principal amount purchased against future Sinking Fund Installments in direct chronological order, unless instructed otherwise in writing by an Authorized Representative at the time of such purchase.

### **Debt Service Fund**

There shall be transferred from the Revenue Account to the Accumulation Account of the Debt Service Fund, the amounts required to be so transferred pursuant to paragraph FIRST above.

Unless otherwise set forth in a Supplemental Indenture, sixty (60) days prior to (A) June 1, moneys on deposit in the Accumulation Account shall be transferred from the Accumulation Account to the Interest Account, related to a series of Senior Bonds or Senior Obligations representing interest payable on such Senior Bonds or Senior Obligations on the June 1 date, and (B) December 1, moneys on deposit in the Accumulation Account shall be transferred from the Accumulation Account to the Principal Account and the Interest Account, allocated on a pro rata basis to the Principal Account and the Interest Account, related to a series of Senior Bonds or Senior Obligations representing interest payable on such Senior Bonds or Senior Obligations on the December 1 date.

There shall be transferred from the Accumulation Account to the Interest Account of the Debt Service Fund, the amounts required to be so transferred described above.

There also shall be deposited into the Interest Account of the Debt Service Fund, if necessary, the following:

(A) Such amount determined by the applicable Supplemental Indenture representing accrued interest received upon the sale of a Series of Bonds.

(B) Amounts transferred from the Capitalized Interest Account for the payment of interest on the Bonds of such Series.

(C) BABs Direct Subsidy Payments.

The Trustee shall pay from the Interest Account, to the Persons entitled thereto, (i) the interest on Senior Bonds as and when due and payable, in the Currency in which the Bonds of such Series are payable, and (ii) the interest component of Senior Obligations at the times, in the manner and on the other terms and conditions as determined by the District and set forth in written directions of an Authorized Representative delivered to the Trustee; provided, however, that amounts deposited to the Interest Account described above shall not be used to pay the interest component of Senior Obligations; and provided further, however, that if the amount available shall not be sufficient to pay in full all such interest due on the same date, then from such available amount the Trustee shall make such payments under Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations ratably, according to the amounts due on such date, without any discrimination or preference. With respect to Adjustable Rate Bonds, upon payment of interest thereon, any difference between the Assumed Interest Rate and the Adjustable Rate, shall be transferred

from the respective Interest Account to the Revenue Account and applied in accordance with the Master Indenture.

There shall be transferred from the Accumulation Account to the Principal Account of the Debt Service Fund, the amounts required to be so transferred described above.

There also shall be deposited into the Principal Account of the Debt Service Fund, if necessary, amounts transferred from the Redemption Fund for the payment of Principal Installments of any Senior Bonds.

The Trustee shall pay from the Principal Account, to the Persons entitled thereto, (A) each Principal Installment for the Senior Bonds (including the Redemption Price payable upon mandatory redemption from Sinking Fund Installments) as and when due and payable, in the Currency in which the Senior Bonds of such Series are payable, and (B) the principal component of Senior Obligations at the times, in the manner and on the other terms and conditions as determined by the District and set forth in written directions of an Authorized Representative delivered to the Trustee; and provided that if the amount available shall not be sufficient to pay in full all such Principal Installments and principal due on the same date, then from such available amount the Trustee shall make such payments under Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations ratably, as determined by an Authorized Representative as evidenced in a written instrument delivered to the Trustee, according to the amounts due on such date, without any discrimination or preference.

Funds for the payment of debt service of any Senior Bonds shall be on deposit in the Principal Account, the Interest Account, the Capitalized Interest Account and the Accumulation Account, at least two (2) months prior to each payment date related to such Bonds.

In the event of the refunding of any Bonds, the Trustee shall, upon the written direction of an Authorized Representative delivered to the Trustee, withdraw from the Debt Service Fund all or any portion of amounts accumulated therein with respect to the Bonds to be refunded and deposit such amounts as provided in such written direction; provided, however, that such withdrawal shall not be made unless immediately thereafter the Bonds being refunded shall be deemed to have been paid pursuant to the Master Indenture.

### **Redemption Fund**

Any amounts transferred from the Bond Proceeds Account as provided in the Indenture upon receipt thereof shall be deposited into the Redemption Fund.

Subject to the limitations contained in the final paragraph of this Section, if, sixty (60) days preceding any interest payment date for Bonds, any Principal Installment due date for Bonds, or due date of interest or principal components of Senior Obligations, the amount on deposit in the Debt Service Fund shall be less than the interest on Bonds due on such interest payment date, the Principal Installment for Bonds due on such Principal Installment due date, or the interest or principal components of Senior Obligations due on the due date thereof, then the Trustee, upon written direction of an Authorized Representative, shall transfer from the Redemption Fund to the Debt Service Fund an amount (or all of the moneys in the Redemption Fund if less than the amount required) which will be sufficient to make up such deficiency in the Debt Service Fund.

To the extent not required to make up a deficiency as required in the second paragraph of this Section, amounts in the Redemption Fund shall be applied by the Trustee, as promptly as practicable after delivery to it of written instructions from an Authorized Representative, to the purchase or redemption

(including the payment of redemption premium, if any) of Bonds. Interest on Bonds so purchased or redeemed shall be paid from the Debt Service Fund and all expenses in connection with such purchase or redemption shall be paid by the District from moneys held in the Revenue Account pursuant to the FOURTH paragraph of the Section entitled "Revenue Account" above.

The transfers required by the second paragraph of this Section shall be made from amounts in the Redemption Fund only to the extent that such amounts are not then required to be applied to the redemption of Bonds for which notice of redemption shall have been given pursuant to the Indenture, unless such notice is conditioned upon the availability of moneys on deposit in the Redemption Fund.

### **Rebate Fund**

The Rebate Fund and the amounts deposited therein shall not be subject to a security interest, pledge, assignment, lien or charge in favor of the Trustee, any Bondholder of any Bond, any other Beneficiary or any other Person.

The Trustee shall deposit in the Rebate Fund such amounts and at such times as shall be specified in written instructions from an Authorized Representative delivered to the Trustee.

The Trustee shall withdraw from the Rebate Fund such amounts and at such times, and deposit such amounts in the Revenue Account, as shall be specified in written instructions from an Authorized Representative delivered to the Trustee.

The Trustee shall have no responsibility or liability for the calculation of amounts required to be deposited in the Rebate Fund under federal tax law.

### **Investment of Funds, Accounts and Subaccounts Held by the Trustee**

Moneys in any Fund, Account or Subaccount (except the Rebate Fund) held by the Trustee shall be continuously invested and reinvested or deposited and redeposited by the Trustee upon the written direction of an Authorized Representative. The District shall direct the Trustee to invest and reinvest the moneys in any Fund, Account or Subaccount held by the Trustee in Investment Obligations so that the maturity date or date of redemption at the option of the holders shall coincide as nearly as practicable with the times at which moneys are anticipated to be needed to be expended. The Investment Obligations purchased by the Trustee shall be held by it, or for its account as Trustee. The Trustee, at the written direction of the District as to specific investments, shall sell, or present for redemption, any Investment Obligations purchased by it as an investment whenever it shall be necessary in order to provide moneys to meet any payment from such Fund, Account or Subaccount. The Trustee shall have no obligation to invest, reinvest, deposit, redeposit or sell investments contemplated by the Indenture except upon the written direction of an Authorized Representative as to specific investments. The Trustee shall have no liability for interest on any money received by it hereunder (except as otherwise agreed in writing with the District and except that the Trustee shall invest such money as required pursuant to written direction of an Authorized Representative) and no responsibility for any loss (after giving effect to any interest or other income thereon except to the extent theretofore paid to the District) incurred on the sale of such investments. The Trustee shall advise the District in writing on or before the 20th day of each calendar month of all investments held for the credit of each Fund, Account or Subaccount in its custody under the provisions of the Indenture as of the end of the preceding month.

Investment Obligations purchased under the provisions of the Indenture as an investment of moneys in any Fund, Account or Subaccount, whether held by the Trustee, shall be deemed at all times to be a part of such Fund, Account or Subaccount but, unless otherwise expressly provided in the Indenture,

(i) the income or interest earned and gains realized in excess of losses suffered by any Fund (other than the Rebate Fund) or Account (other than any Account in the Rebate Fund) due to the investment thereof shall be deposited, upon written direction from an Authorized Representative to the Trustee, in the Rebate Fund and if not required to be so deposited in the Rebate Fund, because no such written direction was received, shall be deposited in the Bond Proceeds Account so long as there are moneys on deposit in the Capitalized Interest Account and, at any time that there are no moneys on deposit in the Capitalized Interest Account, shall be transferred for deposit in the Revenue Account, and (ii) all such income and interest received from any Investment Obligation on deposit in the Rebate Fund shall remain in such Account. The Trustee shall keep a record of all such amounts deposited in the Revenue Account to indicate the source of the income or earnings.

The Trustee shall sell, or present for redemption or exchange, any Investment Obligation purchased by it pursuant to the Indenture or any Supplemental Indenture whenever it shall be requested in writing by an Authorized Representative to do so or whenever it shall be necessary in order to provide moneys to meet any payment or transfer from the Fund, Account or Subaccount for which such investment was made, except that any Investment Obligation may be credited to more than one Fund, Account or Subaccount based upon the portions thereof purchased by or allocable to each such Fund, Account or Subaccount and need not be sold in order to provide for the transfer of amounts from one Fund, Account or Subaccount to another. The Trustee shall advise the District in writing, on or before the twentieth day of each calendar month, of all investments held for the credit of each Fund, Account or Subaccount in its custody under the provisions of the Indenture as of the end of the preceding month.

Nothing in the Indenture shall prevent any Investment Obligations acquired as investments of or security for Funds, Accounts or Subaccounts held under the Indenture from being issued or held in book-entry form on the books of the District, the Treasury of the United States or any national securities depository.

In the event that the Trustee has not, prior to 11:00 a.m. on any Business Day, received investment instructions as provided in the Indenture as to any investment proceeds received hereunder, the Trustee shall invest the same in Investment Obligations having the shortest available maturity, in accordance with standing instructions received from an Authorized Representative.

### **Special Provisions for Refunding Bonds**

Bonds of one or more Series may be authenticated and delivered upon original issuance, subject to the provisions and limitations of the Indenture, as Refunding Bonds, including for the purposes of creating economic savings, restructuring debt service, modifying Indenture covenants, and providing for more favorable debt terms, or any of the foregoing or any other valid governmental purpose of the District. Each Supplemental Indenture authorizing a Series of Refunding Bonds shall set forth the purposes for which such Series is issued and shall include the payment or redemption of all or any part of the Bonds of any one or more Series then Outstanding.

The Refunding Bonds of such Series shall be authenticated and delivered by the Trustee only upon receipt by the Trustee (in addition to the general provisions set forth in the Indenture for the issuance of Bonds) of:

- (i) irrevocable instructions to the Trustee to give due notice of the payment or redemption of all the Bonds so to be refunded on a payment or redemption date specified in such instructions and the payment or redemption dates, if any, upon which such Bonds are to be paid or redeemed;

(ii) if the Bonds of a Series to be refunded are to be paid or redeemed subsequent to the forty-fifth day next succeeding the date of authentication, irrevocable instructions to the Trustee, to provide notice in the manner provided in the Section entitled “Defeasance” below, with respect to the payment of such Bonds pursuant to such Section;

(iii) either (A) moneys or (B) Defeasance Obligations as shall be necessary to comply with the provisions of the second paragraph of the Section entitled “Defeasance,” which moneys and Defeasance Obligations shall be held in trust and used only as provided in said paragraph; and

(iv) a certificate of an independent certified public accountant, or other nationally recognized verification agent, that the amounts described in paragraph (iii) above are sufficient to pay or redeem all of the Bonds to be refunded.

Refunding Bonds may be issued upon compliance with the Section entitled “Issuance of Additional Bonds,” below, in lieu of compliance with the second paragraph above.

### **Additional Bonds**

The Master Indenture permits the issuance of Additional Bonds upon the District’s filing of a certificate of the Chief Financial Officer with the Trustee certifying (i) the Available Withholding Tax Revenues for a 12 consecutive month period of the immediately prior 15 months applicable to the Fiscal Year in which such Additional Bonds are to be issued or Senior Obligations are to be incurred, (ii) the Available Tax Revenues for the same 12 consecutive month period of the immediately prior 15 months that is used to calculate the Available Withholding Tax Revenues, and (iii) the Maximum Annual Debt Service that will be due on the Senior Bonds, including such Additional Bonds and the Senior Obligations, in any subsequent Fiscal Year, and showing that the amount in clause (i) at least equals 2 times the amount in clause (iii), and the amount in clause (ii) at least equals 3 times the amount in clause (iii).

In addition, Additional Bonds may only be issued upon receipt by the Trustee of a certificate of the Chief Financial Officer certifying that the Series of Bonds to be issued does not create a violation of Section 603(b) of the Home Rule Act or the Debt Ceiling Act, treating the Bonds, including that Series, as Outstanding general obligation bonds solely for the purpose of determining whether Section 603(b) or the Debt Ceiling Act is violated.

The District may issue Subordinate Bonds or incur Subordinate Obligations at any time following receipt of written confirmation from each Rating Agency that its Rating on the Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations (to the extent that such obligations are rated) will not be lower than the Rating in effect prior to the issuance of the proposed Subordinate Bonds or Subordinate Obligations as a direct result of such issuance. Pursuant to the Act and the Indenture, the payment of debt service on Subordinate Bonds and Subordinate Obligations is subordinate to the payment of debt service on Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations. Subordinate Bonds and Subordinate Obligations are not equally and ratably secured with Senior Bonds and Senior Obligations by the Trust Estate.

### **Credit and Liquidity Facilities; Rights of Credit Facility Providers**

In connection with any Bonds, the District may obtain or cause to be obtained one or more Credit Facilities or Liquidity Facilities and agree with the Credit Facility Provider or Liquidity Facility Provider to reimburse such provider directly for amounts paid under the terms of such Credit Facility or Liquidity Facility, together with interest thereon; provided, however, that no obligation to reimburse a Credit

Facility Provider or Liquidity Facility Provider shall be created, for purposes of the Indenture, until amounts are paid under such Credit Facility or Liquidity Facility.

Any Supplemental Indenture may provide that (i) so long as a Credit Facility providing security is in full force and effect, and payment on the Credit Facility is not in default and the Credit Facility Provider is qualified to do business in the District, the Credit Facility Provider shall be deemed to be the sole Bondholder of the Outstanding Bonds the payment of which such Credit Facility secures when the approval, consent or action of such Bondholders is required or may be exercised under the Indenture, or, in the alternative, that the approval, consent or action of the Credit Facility Provider shall be required in addition to the approval, consent or action of the applicable percentage of the Bondholders required by the Section entitled "Powers of Amendment" below and following an Event of Default, provided that no such approval, consent or action of a Credit Facility Provider may be made or taken without the approval, consent or action of the Bondholder of each Bond affected if such approval, consent or action of such Bondholder otherwise would be required by the second sentence of the Section entitled "Powers of Amendment," and (ii) in the event that the principal, Sinking Fund Installments, if any, and Redemption Price, if applicable, and interest due on any Outstanding Bonds shall be paid under the provisions of a Credit Facility, all covenants, agreements and other obligations of the District to such Bondholders shall continue to exist and such Bonds shall be deemed to remain Outstanding, and such Credit Facility Provider shall be subrogated to the rights of such Bondholders in accordance with the terms of such Credit Facility.

### **Qualified Hedges**

The District may enter into one or more Qualified Hedges in connection with any Bonds (i) at the time of issuance of such Bonds, (ii) prior to the issuance of such Bonds, in anticipation of the issuance thereof, provided such Bonds have been authorized by the District and payments by the District under the Qualified Hedges do not commence until the date such Bonds are expected to be issued or (iii) after the issuance of such Bonds.

### **Purchase in Lieu of Remarketing**

Notwithstanding anything in the Indenture to the contrary and subject to an opinion of Bond Counsel provided to the Trustee and the District that such action will not adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the Bonds, at any time during which the Bonds are subject to remarketing pursuant to the provisions of any Supplemental Indenture, any Bonds to be remarketed may be purchased by the Trustee (for the account of the District) on the date which would be the remarketing date at the direction of and with the prior written consent of the District (which direction shall be given at least one (1) Business Day prior to the remarketing date), at a purchase price equal to the remarketing price which would have been applicable to such Bonds on the remarketing date. The Bonds shall be purchased in lieu of remarketing only from amounts provided by the District which shall be deposited by the Trustee to a Remarketing Account established pursuant to the Supplemental Indenture relating to such Bonds. In the event the Trustee is so directed to purchase Bonds in lieu of remarketing, no notice to the Holders of the Bonds to be so purchased (other than any notice of remarketing otherwise required under the applicable Supplemental Indenture) shall be required, and the Trustee shall be authorized to apply the funds deposited in the Remarketing Account for such purpose. Such Bonds so purchased for the account of the District shall be remarketed by a remarketing agent in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Supplemental Indenture. Such Bonds, if not remarketed or transferred as provided therein, shall be redeemed and cancelled automatically by the Trustee on the date approved by Bond Counsel. Any such purchase of Bonds is not intended as an extinguishment of debt represented by the Bonds.

## **Particular Covenants of the District**

### *Payment of Obligations*

The District shall duly and punctually pay or cause to be paid the principal and premium, if any, on every Bond and the interest thereon, and all Senior Obligations and Subordinate Obligations, at the date(s) and place(s) and in the manner mentioned in the Indenture, the applicable Supplemental Indenture, the Bonds, and applicable Credit Facilities, Liquidity Facilities, and Qualified Hedges according to the true intent and meaning thereof, and shall duly and punctually satisfy when due all Sinking Fund Installments which may be established for any Series, subject to the provisions of the Indenture.

### *Extension of Payment of Bonds*

The District shall not directly or indirectly extend or assent to the extension of the maturity of any of the Bonds or claims for interest by the purchase or funding of such Bonds or by any other arrangement. Nothing shall be deemed to limit the right of the District (i) to issue Option Bonds or Refunding Bonds as provided herein and such issuance shall not be deemed to constitute an extension of maturity of Bonds or (ii) to apply any amount in the Debt Service Fund or the Redemption Fund to the purchase or redemption of Bonds as provided in the Indenture.

### *Non-Impairment*

The District pledges and covenants and agrees with the holders of the Bonds that, subject to the provisions of the Financing Documents, the District will not:

(i) Limit or alter the revenues pledged to secure the Bonds or the basis on which such revenues are collected or allocated, in a manner that would generate Available Tax Revenues below the levels required to pay or secure the payment of the Bonds;

(ii) Impair the contractual obligations of the District to fulfill the terms of any agreement made with the holders of the Bonds, provided, however, that the District may modify the District Income Tax rates or the income subject to those rates only if the modification, if in effect, would not have reduced the ratio of (A) District Income Tax generated by Available Withholding Tax Revenues for any 12 consecutive month period during the 15 month period immediately preceding the calculation to (B) the Maximum Annual Debt Service on the Senior Bonds then outstanding below 2.00;

(iii) In any way impair the rights or remedies of the holders of the Bonds; and

(iv) If Bonds are issued as Tax-Exempt Bonds, modify in any way the exemptions from taxation provided for in subsection (e) of Section 47-340.29 of the D.C. Official Code and the Act until the Bonds, together with interest thereon, and all costs and expenses in connection with any suit, action or proceeding by or on behalf of the holders of the Bonds, are fully met and discharged.

Pursuant to Section 47-340.29(g) of the D.C. Official Code, this pledge and agreement of the District is included as part of the contract with the holders of the Bonds.

### *Creation of Liens*

Until the pledge created by the Indenture shall be fully satisfied and discharged as described under "Defeasance" below, the District shall not (i) issue any bonds or other evidences of indebtedness secured by a pledge of the Trust Estate held or set aside by the District or by the Trustee under the

Indenture, nor create or cause to be created any lien or charge on the Trust Estate, other than as permitted by the Act and the Indenture, (ii) at any time when the District is in default in making any payment required to be made under the Indenture or maintaining the balance in any Fund, Account or Subaccount required to be maintained in the amount required therefor by the Indenture, set apart or appropriate and pay any amount in any Fund, Account or Subaccount except as required by the Indenture, nor (iii) issue any bonds or other evidences of indebtedness, other than the Bonds, secured by a pledge of any revenues, rates, fees, charges, rentals or other earned income or receipts, as derived in cash by or for the account of the District, pledged under the Indenture. The District may not issue Bonds with a payment priority or claim against the Trust Estate that is senior to that of the Senior Bonds. The District, in its discretion, may determine to execute and deliver Subordinate Bonds and incur Subordinate Obligations and payment priorities which are subordinate to the payment priorities accorded to the Senior Bonds under the Indenture.

#### *Tax Matters*

The covenants of this Section are made solely for the benefit of the Bondholders of, and shall be applicable solely to, all Bonds except Bonds to which the District determines in a Supplemental Indenture that this Section shall not apply.

The District will not make, or give its consent to the Trustee or any other Person to make, any use of the proceeds of the Bonds or of any moneys which may be deemed to be the proceeds of the Bonds pursuant to Section 148 of the Code which, if reasonably expected to have been so used on the date of issuance of the Bonds would have caused any of the Bonds to have been “arbitrage bonds” within the meaning of said Section 148 and the regulations in effect thereunder at the time of such use and applicable to obligations issued on the date of issuance of the Bonds.

The District shall at all times do and perform all acts and things necessary or desirable and within its power in order to assure that interest paid on the Tax Exempt Bonds shall be excluded from gross income for Federal income tax purposes.

Notwithstanding any other provision of the Indenture, including in particular those summarized in the Section entitled “Defeasance” below, the obligation to comply with the requirements of the Indenture summarized in this Section shall survive the defeasance or payment in full of the Bonds.

#### **Resignation of Trustee**

The Trustee may at any time resign and be discharged of the duties and obligations created by the Indenture by giving not less than 30 days’ written notice to the District (which shall give prompt written notice to each Beneficiary), specifying the date when such resignation shall take effect, and such resignation shall take effect upon the day specified in such notice unless (i) no successor shall have been appointed by such date in which case such resignation shall become effective upon the appointment of a successor, or (ii) previously a successor shall have been appointed by the District or the Bondholders as provided in the Section entitled “Appointment of Successor Trustee” below, in which event such resignation shall take effect immediately on the appointment of such successor.

#### **Removal of Trustee**

The Trustee may be removed at any time, with or without cause, by an instrument or concurrent instruments in writing, delivered to the Trustee, and signed by the Bondholders of a majority in principal amount of the Bonds then Outstanding or their attorneys-in-fact duly authorized, excluding any Bonds held by or for the account of the District, or, so long as no Event of Default or event which with the

giving of notice or the passage of time would constitute an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, by an instrument in writing delivered to the Trustee and signed by an Authorized Representative; provided, however, that in each case that a successor Trustee shall be simultaneously appointed with the filing of such instrument.

### **Appointment of Successor Trustee**

In case at any time the Trustee shall resign or shall be removed or shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged bankrupt or insolvent, or if a receiver, liquidator or conservator of the Trustee, or of its property, shall be appointed, or if any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee, or of its property or affairs, a successor may be appointed by the Bondholders of a majority in principal amount of the Bonds then Outstanding, excluding any Bonds held by or for the account of the District, by an instrument or concurrent instruments in writing signed and acknowledged by such Bondholders or by their attorneys-in-fact duly authorized and delivered to such successor Trustee, notification thereof being given to the District and the predecessor Trustee; provided, nevertheless, that unless a successor Trustee shall have been appointed by the Bondholders as aforesaid, the District by a duly executed written instrument signed by an Authorized Representative shall forthwith appoint a Trustee to fill such vacancy until a successor Trustee shall be appointed by the Bondholders. The Trustee shall mail a copy of the notice of any such appointment, postage prepaid, to the Bondholders of any Bonds, at their last addresses appearing on the registry books. Any successor Trustee appointed by the District shall, immediately and without further act, be superseded by a Trustee appointed by the Bondholders.

If in a proper case no appointment of a successor Trustee shall be made pursuant to the foregoing provisions within 30 days after the Trustee shall have given to the District written notice as provided in the Section entitled "Removal of Trustee" above or after a vacancy in the office of the Trustee shall have occurred by reason of its inability to act or its removal, the Trustee or the Bondholder of any Bond may apply to any court of competent jurisdiction to appoint a successor Trustee. Said court may thereupon, after such notice, if any, as such court may deem proper, appoint a successor Trustee.

Any Trustee appointed as described above in succession to the Trustee shall be a bank or trust company organized under the laws of a state of the United States of America or of the District, or a national banking association, and having a capital and surplus aggregating at least \$50,000,000, if there be such a bank or trust company or national banking association willing and able to accept the office on reasonable and customary terms and authorized by law to perform all the duties imposed upon it by the Indenture.

### **Supplemental Indentures**

#### *Supplemental Indentures Effective upon Filing with the Trustee*

For any one or more of the following purposes and at any time or from time to time, the District may adopt a Supplemental Indenture which, upon the filing with the Trustee of a copy thereof certified by an Authorized Representative, shall be fully effective in accordance with its terms:

- (i) to close the Indenture against, or provide limitations and restrictions in addition to the limitations and restrictions contained in the Indenture on, the authentication and delivery of the Bonds or the issuance of other evidences of indebtedness;

(ii) to add to the covenants and agreements of the District in the Indenture, other covenants and agreements to be observed by the District which are not contrary to or inconsistent with the Indenture as theretofore in effect;

(iii) to add to the limitations and restrictions in the Indenture, other limitations and restrictions to be observed by the District which are not contrary to or inconsistent with the Indenture as theretofore in effect;

(iv) to surrender any right, power or privilege reserved to or conferred upon the District by the Indenture to the extent such surrender is for the benefit of the Bondholders of the Bonds;

(v) to authorize Bonds of a Series and, in connection therewith, specify and determine the matters and things referred to in the Section of the Indenture relating to the general provisions for the issuance of Bonds, and also any other matters and things relative to such Bonds which are not contrary to or inconsistent with the Indenture as theretofore in effect, or to amend, modify or rescind any such authorization, specification or determination at any time prior to the first authentication and delivery of such Bonds;

(vi) to confirm, as further assurance, any pledge under, and the subjection to any lien or pledge created or to be created by, the Indenture, of the Trust Estate or of any other moneys, securities, funds or accounts;

(vii) to modify any of the provisions of the Indenture as may be necessary or desirable to provide for the issuance of Bonds in book-entry form pursuant to the Indenture;

(viii) to cure any ambiguity, defect or inconsistent provision in the Indenture;

(ix) to provide such provisions with respect to Subordinate Bonds as are necessary and desirable, provided, that no such provisions shall adversely affect the payment priorities under the Indenture of any Bonds then Outstanding;

(x) to accommodate the technical, operational and structural features of Bonds which are issued or are proposed to be issued or of a Program which has been authorized or is proposed to be authorized, including, but not limited to, changes needed to accommodate bond anticipation notes, commercial paper, auction Bonds, Qualified Hedges, Option Bonds, Fixed Tender Bonds, other Short-Term/Demand Obligation, and other variable rate or Adjustable Rate Bonds, Capital Appreciation Bonds and other discounted or compound interest Bonds or other forms of indebtedness which the District from time to time deems appropriate to incur;

(xi) to provide for a pledge of Trust Estate for the payment and as security for Liquidity Facilities, Credit Facilities and Qualified Hedges as permitted by the Section entitled "Pledge" above;

(xii) to amend or modify any Supplemental Indenture authorizing Bonds of a Series to reflect the substitution of a new Credit Facility or Liquidity Facility for the Credit Facility or Liquidity Facility then in effect or of a new Qualified Hedge for a Qualified Hedge then in effect on termination of a Qualified Hedge;

(xiii) to add to the Indenture any provisions required by law to preserve the exclusion from gross income for Federal income tax purposes of interest received on the Bonds then Outstanding or to be issued or the exemption of interest received on such Bonds from District income taxation;

(xiv) to add requirements the compliance with which is required by a Rating Agency in connection with issuing a rating with respect to any Series of Bonds;

(xv) to implement or modify any primary and secondary market disclosure requirements.

(xvi) to remove the Trustee or appoint a successor Trustee in accordance with the Master Indenture;

(xvii) to modify any of the provisions of the Indenture or any previously adopted Supplemental Indenture in any respect whatsoever, provided that (i) such modification shall be, and be expressed to be, effective only after all Bonds of any Series Outstanding at the date of the adoption of such Supplemental Indenture shall cease to be Outstanding and (ii) such Supplemental Indenture shall be specifically referred to in the text of all Bonds of any Series authenticated and delivered after the date of the adoption of such Supplemental Indenture and of Bonds issued in exchange therefor or in place thereof;

(xviii) to insert such provisions clarifying matters or questions arising under the Indenture as are necessary or desirable and are not contrary to or inconsistent with the Indenture as theretofore in effect; or

(xix) to make any other modification or amendment of the Indenture which the Trustee shall in its sole discretion determine will not have a material adverse affect on the interest of Bondholders.

#### *Supplemental Indentures Effective with Consent of Bondholders*

At any time or from time to time, the District may adopt a Supplemental Indenture subject to consent by Bondholders in accordance with and subject to the provisions of the Indenture relating to the amendment of the Indenture, which Supplemental Indenture, upon the delivery to the Trustee of a copy thereof certified by an Authorized Representative, and upon compliance with the provisions of the Section of the Indenture relating to amendment of the Indenture, shall become fully effective in accordance with its terms as provided in said Section.

#### *General Provisions*

The Indenture shall not be modified or amended in any respect except as provided in and in accordance with and subject to the provisions of the Indenture relating to Supplemental Indentures and to amendment of the Indenture. Nothing in the Indenture relating to Supplemental Indentures and to amendment of the Indenture shall affect or limit the right or obligation of the District to make, execute, acknowledge or deliver any instrument pursuant to the provisions of the Section entitled "Further Assurance" in the Indenture or the right or obligation of the District to execute and deliver to the Trustee any instrument which elsewhere in the Indenture it is provided shall be delivered to the Trustee.

Any Supplemental Indenture referred to and permitted or authorized as described under “Supplemental Indentures Effective Upon Filing with the Trustee” may be adopted by the District without the consent of any of the Bondholders, but shall become effective only on the conditions, to the extent and at the time provided in said Sections, respectively. The copy of every Supplemental Indenture when delivered to the Trustee shall be accompanied by an Opinion of Bond Counsel stating that such Supplemental Indenture has been duly and lawfully adopted in accordance with the provisions of the Indenture, is authorized or permitted by the Indenture, and is valid and binding upon the District and enforceable in accordance with its terms.

The Trustee is authorized to accept the delivery of a certified copy of any Supplemental Indenture referred to and permitted or authorized by the Indenture and to make all further agreements and stipulations which may be therein contained, and the Trustee, in taking such action in good faith, shall be fully protected in relying on an Opinion of Bond Counsel that such Supplemental Indenture is authorized or permitted by the provisions of the Indenture.

No Supplemental Indenture shall change or modify any of the rights or obligations of the Trustee without its written assent thereto.

### **Powers of Amendment**

In addition to amendments and modifications to the Indenture permitted without the consent of the Bondholders, any modification or amendment of the Indenture and of the rights and obligations of the District and of the Bondholders may be made by a Supplemental Indenture, with the written consent given as provided in the Indenture, (i) of the Bondholders of at least a majority in principal amount of the Bonds Outstanding at the time such consent is given, and (ii) in case less than all of the several Series of Bonds then Outstanding are affected by the modification or amendment, of the Bondholders of at least a majority in principal amount of the Bonds of each Series so affected and Outstanding at the time such consent is given; provided, however, that if such modification or amendment will, by its terms, not take effect so long as any Bonds of any specified like Series and maturity remain Outstanding, the consent of the Bondholders shall not be required and such Bonds shall not be deemed to be Outstanding for the purpose of any calculation of Outstanding Bonds. No such modification or amendment shall permit a change in the terms of redemption or maturity of the principal (or Compounded Amount, if applicable) of any Outstanding Bond or of any installment of interest thereon or a reduction in the principal amount (or Compounded Amount, if applicable) or the Redemption Price thereof or in the rate of interest thereon without the consent of each Bondholder affected thereby, or shall reduce the percentage of the aggregate principal amount (or Compounded Amount, if applicable) of Bonds or otherwise affect classes of Bonds the consent of the Bondholders of which is required to effect any such modification or amendment without the consent of all Bondholders, or shall change or modify any of the rights or obligations of the Trustee without its written assent thereto, or shall change or modify any of the rights of the providers of Qualified Hedges, Credit Facilities or Liquidity Facilities regarding source of and security for payments due to such Persons, or amount and timing of payments due, without the prior written consent of such Persons. For the purposes of the provisions of the Indenture summarized in this Section, a Series shall be deemed to be affected by a modification or amendment of the Indenture if the same adversely affects or diminishes the rights of the Bondholders of such Series. The Trustee may in its discretion determine whether or not in accordance with the foregoing powers of amendment, Bonds of any particular Series or maturity would be affected by any modification or amendment of the Indenture and any such determination if reasonable and in good faith shall be binding and conclusive on the District and all Bondholders.

## **Modification by Unanimous Consent**

The terms and provisions of the Indenture and the rights and obligations of the District and of the Bondholders may be modified or amended in any respect upon the adoption and filing by the District with the Trustee of a Supplemental Indenture and the consent of the Bondholders of all of the Bonds then Outstanding, such consent to be given as provided in the Master Indenture except that no notice to Bondholders shall be required.

## **Events of Default and Remedies**

### *Events of Default*

Each of the following events shall constitute an Event of Default under the Indenture:

(i) There shall occur a default in the payment of principal or Redemption Price of or interest on any Bond or payments due to any Senior Obligation related thereto after the same shall have become due, whether at maturity or upon call for redemption or otherwise.

(ii) There shall occur a failure to observe, or a refusal to comply with, the terms of the Indenture or the Bonds, other than a failure or refusal constituting an event specified in paragraph (i) of this subsection; provided, however, that with respect to any failure to observe or refusal to comply with the covenants and agreements set forth in the Indenture, such failure or refusal shall have continued for a period of sixty (60) days after written notice, specifying such failure and requesting that it be remedied, is given to the District by the Trustee or any Beneficiary; unless the Trustee shall agree in writing to an extension of such period prior to its expiration, provided, however, that the Trustee shall be deemed to have agreed to an extension of such period if corrective action is initiated by the District within such period and is being diligently pursued;

Unless otherwise prohibited by the Act or the Indenture, the exercise by the District of its right to amend, modify, repeal or otherwise alter statutes imposing or relating to the Income Tax (as defined in § 47-1806.03 of the D.C. Official Code), including the revenues generated by such tax or the rates imposed by such tax, shall not constitute a default or Event of Default under the Indenture.

In the event that the District shall issue Subordinate Bonds, or execute Subordinate Obligations, the related Supplemental Indenture shall provide for the determination of Events of Default, and the imposition of remedies contained in the Master Indenture, in accordance with the provision that all Senior Bonds and all Senior Obligations related thereto shall be accorded senior status such that no Event of Default may be declared for any default related to such Subordinate Bonds or Subordinate Obligations, and no remedy may be invoked for any such default on Subordinate Bonds or Subordinate Obligations, until the Senior Bonds and all Senior Obligations related thereto are fully retired or are defeased in accordance with the provisions of the Indenture.

### *Remedies*

The Trustee may, and, upon the written request of the Bondholders of not less than twenty-five per centum (25%) in principal amount of the Outstanding Bonds, shall, proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Bondholders by such of the following remedies, as the Trustee being advised by counsel, shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce such rights subject to the provisions of the Indenture:

(i) by suit, action or proceeding to enforce all rights of the Bondholders, including the right to collect or require the District to collect Revenues adequate to carry out the covenants, agreements and pledges with respect thereto contained in the Indenture and to require the District to carry out any other covenant or agreement with Bondholders and to perform its duties under the Act;

(ii) by suit upon the Bonds limited, upon recovery thereunder, to the Trust Estate pledged under the Indenture;

(iii) by action or suit in equity, to require the District to account as if it were the trustee of an express trust for the Bondholders, for the Trust Estate and assets pledged under the Indenture as shall be within its control; and

(iv) by action or suit in equity, to enjoin any acts or things which may be unlawful or in violation of the rights of the Bondholders or the Beneficiaries.

In the enforcement of any remedy under the Indenture, but subject to the Sections entitled "Authorization of Bonds," "The Pledge" and "No Personal Liability," the Trustee shall be entitled to sue for, enforce payment on and receive any and all amounts then or during any default becoming, and at any time remaining, due from the District for principal, Redemption Price, interest or otherwise for Bonds under any provision of the Indenture or any Supplemental Indenture or of the Bonds, and unpaid, with interest on overdue payments at the rate or rates of interest specified in such Bonds, together with any and all costs and expenses of collection and of all proceedings under the Indenture and under such Bonds, without prejudice to any other right or remedy of the Trustee or of the Bondholders, and to recover and enforce judgment or decree against the District for any portion of such amounts remaining unpaid, with interest, costs and expenses of collection, in any manner provided by law, the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable.

***There shall be no rights of acceleration with respect to the Bonds.***

*Priority of Payments After Event of Default*

Subject to the provisions of the Indenture relating to Trustee compensation, in the event that the funds held by the Trustee or the Paying Agent shall be insufficient for the payment of interest and principal or Compounded Amount or Redemption Price then due on the Bonds and other amounts payable as described in clauses FIRST through FOURTH below, such funds (excluding funds held for the payment or redemption of particular Bonds which have theretofore become due at maturity or by call for redemption) and any other moneys received or collected by the Trustee and any moneys or other property distributable in respect of the District's obligations under the Indenture after the occurrence of an Event of Default, shall be applied as follows:

FIRST: to the payment to the Persons entitled thereto of all installments of interest on the Bonds and the interest component of Senior Obligations then due in the order of the maturity of such installments, and, if the amount available shall not be sufficient to pay in full any installment due on the same date, then to the payment thereof ratably, according to the amounts due on such date, without any discrimination or preference;

SECOND: to the payment to the Persons entitled thereto of the unpaid principal or Redemption Price of the Bonds and the unpaid principal component of Senior Obligations which shall have become due, whether at maturity or by call for redemption, in the order of their due dates and, if the amount available shall not be sufficient to pay in full all the Bonds and the principal component of Senior

Obligations due on the same date, then to the payment thereof ratably, according to the amounts of principal or Redemption Price due on such date, without any discrimination or preference;

THIRD: to the payment to the Persons entitled thereto of amounts reimbursable or payable by the District under each Credit Facility for draws or payments thereunder to pay principal of or interest on Bonds, whether such reimbursements or payments are made to the Ancillary Facility Provider as a Bondholder, as a subrogee or otherwise, and regularly scheduled fees payable under each Credit Facility and Liquidity Facility; and

FOURTH: to the payment to the Persons entitled thereto of amounts payable by the District under each Credit Facility, Liquidity Facility and Qualified Hedge not constituting Senior Obligations nor payable pursuant to clause THIRD above.

The provisions of the Indenture summarized above are in all respects subject to the provisions of the Indenture relating to extending the payment of Bonds.

Whenever moneys are to be applied by the Trustee as described above, such moneys shall be applied by the Trustee at such times, and from time to time, as provided above. The deposit of such moneys with the Trustee, or otherwise setting aside such moneys in trust for the proper purpose, shall constitute proper application by the Trustee and the Trustee shall incur no liability whatsoever to the District, to any Bondholder to any Beneficiary or to any other Person for any delay in applying any such moneys, so long as the Trustee acts without negligence or willful misconduct. Whenever the Trustee shall exercise such discretion in applying such moneys, it shall fix the date (which shall be an interest payment date unless the Trustee shall deem another date more suitable) upon which such application is to be made and upon such date interest on the amounts of principal (or Compounded Amount, if any) to be paid on such date shall cease to accrue. The Trustee shall give such notice as it may deem appropriate for the fixing of any such date. The Trustee or the Paying Agent shall not be required to make payment to the Bondholder of any Bond unless such Bond shall be presented to the Trustee or the Paying Agent for appropriate endorsement or for cancellation if fully paid.

#### *Termination of Proceedings*

In case any proceeding taken by the Trustee on account of any Event of Default has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, then in every such case the District, the Trustee, the Beneficiaries and the Bondholders shall be restored to their former positions and rights under the Indenture, respectively, and all rights, remedies, powers and duties of the Trustee shall continue as though no other such proceeding had been taken.

#### *Bondholders' Direction of Proceedings*

Anything in the Indenture to the contrary notwithstanding, the Bondholders of a majority in principal amount of the Bonds then Outstanding shall have the right, by an instrument or concurrent instruments in writing executed and delivered to the Trustee, to direct the method of conducting all remedial proceedings to be taken by the Trustee under the Indenture, provided that such direction shall not be otherwise than in accordance with law or the provisions of the Indenture, and that the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction which in the opinion of the Trustee would be unjustly prejudicial to Bondholders not parties to such direction or would involve the Trustee in personal liability.

### *Limitation on Rights of Bondholders*

No Bondholder of any Bond shall have any right to institute any suit, action, mandamus or other proceeding in equity or at law under the Indenture, or for the protection or enforcement of any right under the Indenture, unless such Bondholder shall have given to the Trustee written notice of the Event of Default or breach of duty on account of which such suit, action or proceeding is to be taken, and unless the Bondholders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Bonds then Outstanding shall have made written request of the Trustee after the right to exercise such powers or right of action, as the case may be, shall have occurred, and shall have afforded the Trustee a reasonable opportunity either to proceed to exercise the powers granted in the Indenture or granted under the law or to institute such action, suit or proceeding in its name and unless, also, there shall have been offered to the Trustee reasonable security and indemnity against the costs, expenses (including legal fees and expenses) and liabilities to be incurred therein or thereby, and the Trustee shall have refused or neglected to comply with such request within a reasonable time; and such notification, request and offer of indemnity are declared in every such case, at the option of the Trustee, to be conditions precedent to the execution of the powers under the Indenture or for any other remedy provided under the Indenture or by law. It is understood and intended that no one or more Bondholders or other Beneficiary secured by the Indenture shall have any right in any manner whatever by his or their action to affect, disturb or prejudice the security of the Indenture, or to enforce any right under the Indenture or under law with respect to the Bonds, or the Indenture, except in the manner provided in the Indenture, and that all proceedings at law or in equity shall be instituted, had and maintained in the manner provided in the Indenture and for the benefit of all Bondholders of the Outstanding Bonds. Nothing contained in the Indenture relating to defaults and remedies shall affect or impair the right of any Bondholder to enforce the payment of the principal of and interest on such Bondholder's Bonds or the obligation of the District to pay the principal of (or Compounded Amount, if any) and interest on each Bond issued under the Indenture to the Bondholder thereof at the time and place in said Bond expressed.

Anything to the contrary in any provision of the Indenture notwithstanding, each Bondholder of any Bond by such Bondholder's acceptance thereof, shall be deemed to have agreed that any court in its discretion may require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under the Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the reasonable costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including, reasonable pre-trial, trial and appellate attorneys' fees, against any party litigant in any such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this paragraph shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Bondholder or group of Bondholders holding at least 25% in principal amount of the Bonds Outstanding, or to any suit instituted by any Bondholder for the enforcement of the payment of any Bond on or after the respective due date thereof expressed in such Bond.

### *Possession of Bonds by Trustee Not Required*

All rights of action under the Indenture or under any of the Bonds, enforceable by the Trustee, may be enforced by it without the possession of any of the Bonds or the production thereof on the trial or other proceeding relative thereto, and any such suit, action or proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its name for the benefit of all of such Bondholders, subject to the provisions of the Indenture.

### *Remedies Not Exclusive*

No remedy conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Bondholders is intended to be exclusive of any other remedy and each and every such remedy shall be cumulative and shall be in

addition to any other remedy given under the Indenture or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or by statute.

#### *No Waiver of Default*

No delay or omission of the Trustee, the Beneficiaries or of any Bondholder of the Bonds to exercise any right or power accruing upon any default shall impair any such right or power or shall be construed to be a waiver of any such default or an acquiescence therein and every power and remedy given by the Indenture to the Trustee and the owners of the Bonds or such Beneficiaries, respectively, may be exercised from time to time and as often as may be deemed expedient.

#### *Defeasance*

Bonds which are denominated and payable only in Dollars may be defeased pursuant to the Indenture. Bonds denominated in a Foreign Currency or Currencies may be defeased pursuant to the provisions contained in the Indenture, as affected by the provisions of the related Supplemental Indenture. The District shall pay any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the Defeasance Obligations deposited pursuant to the Indenture or the principal and interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Bondholders.

If the District shall pay or cause to be paid, or there shall otherwise be paid, to all Bondholders, the principal and interest and Redemption Price, if any, to become due thereon, at the times and in the manner stipulated therein and in the Indenture, then, at the option of the District, expressed in an instrument in writing signed by an Authorized Representative and delivered to the Trustee, the covenants, agreements and other obligations of the District to the Bondholders shall be discharged and satisfied. In such event, and provided that all amounts owing to the Trustee and all Beneficiaries shall have been fully paid, the Trustee shall, upon the request of the District, execute and deliver to the District such instruments as may be desirable to evidence such discharge and satisfaction and the Trustee shall pay over or deliver to the District all money, securities and funds held by them pursuant to the Indenture which are not required for the payment or redemption of Bonds not theretofore surrendered for such payment or redemption.

Bonds or any portion thereof for the payment or redemption of which moneys shall have been set aside and shall be held in trust by the Trustee (through deposit by the District of funds for such payment or redemption or otherwise) at the maturity or redemption date thereof shall be deemed to have been paid within the meaning and with the effect expressed in the Indenture. Any Outstanding Bonds of any Series or any maturity within a Series or portion thereof shall prior to the maturity or redemption date thereof be deemed to have been paid within the meaning and with the effect expressed in the Indenture if (a) in case any of said Bonds are to be redeemed on any date prior to their maturity, the District shall have given to the Trustee irrevocable instructions to give, as provided in the Indenture, notice of redemption on said date of such Bonds, (b) there shall have been deposited with the Trustee either moneys in an amount which shall be sufficient, or Defeasance Obligations the principal of and interest on which when due and without reinvestment, except as provided below, will provide moneys which, together with the moneys, if any deposited with the Trustee at the same time, shall be sufficient to pay when due the principal or Redemption Price, if applicable, and interest due and to become due on said Bonds on and prior to the redemption date or maturity date thereof, as the case may be, and (c) in the event said Bonds (or portions thereof) are not by their terms subject to redemption or maturity within the next succeeding 60 days, the District shall have given the Trustee irrevocable instructions to mail, not less than seven (7) days after receipt of such instructions, a notice to the Bondholders (or portion thereof) which are to be deemed to have been paid under the Indenture that the deposit required by (b) above has been made with the Trustee and that said Bonds or portion thereof are deemed to have been paid in accordance with the Indenture and

stating such maturity or redemption date upon which moneys are to be available for the payment of the principal or Redemption Price, if applicable, on said Bonds or portion thereof, including the interest accrued thereon. Such notice shall be mailed, postage prepaid, to such Bondholders or portion thereof at their last mailing address, if any, appearing on the registry books, but such mailing shall not be a condition precedent to the deemed payment of such Bonds and failure so to mail, or failure by any Bondholder to receive, any such notice shall not affect the validity of the defeasance of such Bonds.

Neither Defeasance Obligations nor moneys deposited with the Trustee, nor principal or interest payments on any such Defeasance Obligations, shall be withdrawn or used for any purpose other than, and such Defeasance Obligations and moneys shall be held in trust for, the payment of the principal or Redemption Price, if applicable, and interest on said Bonds; provided that any cash received from such principal or interest payments on such Defeasance Obligations deposited with the Trustee, if not then needed for such purpose, shall, to the extent practicable, be reinvested by the Trustee at the written direction of the District in Defeasance Obligations maturing at the time or times and in amounts sufficient to pay when due the principal or Redemption Price, if applicable, and interest to become due on said Bonds on and prior to such redemption date or maturity date thereof, as the case may be. Any income or interest earned by, or increment to, the investment of any such moneys so deposited, in excess of the amounts required to pay the principal of, Redemption Price, if applicable, and interest on such Bonds, as realized, shall be deposited by the Trustee in the Revenue Account. To the extent required by the provider of a Credit Facility, the Bonds which are the subject of the enhancement of such Credit Facility shall not be deemed paid under the Indenture unless there shall have been delivered to the Trustee and the provider of such Credit Facility (a) a verification report of a firm of independent accountants verifying the sufficiency of the escrow created hereunder to timely make full payment of principal or Redemption Price, if applicable, and interest on such Bonds to the dates scheduled for such payment, and (b) an opinion of Bond Counsel to the effect that, based upon the assumptions stated in such opinion, such Bonds are deemed defeased under the provisions of the Indenture.

For purposes of determining whether Adjustable Rate Bonds shall be deemed to have been paid prior to the maturity or redemption date thereof, as the case may be, by the deposit of moneys, or Investment Obligations and moneys, if any, in accordance with the Indenture, the interest to come due on such Adjustable Rate Bonds on or prior to the maturity date or redemption date thereof, as the case may be, shall be calculated at the Contractual Maximum Interest Rate permitted by the terms thereof, provided, however, that if on any date, as a result of such Adjustable Rate Bonds having borne interest at less than such Contractual Maximum Interest Rate for any period, the total amount of moneys and Investment Obligations on deposit with the Trustee for the payment of interest on such Adjustable Rate Bonds is in excess of the total amount which would have been required to be deposited with the Trustee on such date in respect of such Adjustable Rate Bonds in order to satisfy the requirements of the Indenture, the Trustee shall pay the amount of such excess to the District free and clear of any trust, pledge, lien, encumbrance or security interest created by the Indenture.

Option Bonds shall be deemed to have been paid in accordance with the Indenture only if, in addition to satisfying the other requirements of the Indenture, there shall have been deposited with the Trustee moneys in an amount which shall be sufficient to pay when due the maximum amount of principal of and premium, if any, and interest on such Bonds which could become payable to such Bondholders upon the exercise of any options provided to the Bondholders; provided, however, that if, at the time a deposit is made with the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture, the options originally exercisable by the Bondholder of an Option Bond are no longer exercisable, such Bond shall not be considered an Option Bond. If any portion of the moneys deposited with the Trustee for the payment of the principal and premium, if any, and interest on Option Bonds is not required for such purpose, the Trustee shall pay the amount of such excess to the District free and clear of any trust, pledge, lien, encumbrance or security interest created by the Indenture.

Anything in the Indenture to the contrary notwithstanding, but subject to any applicable law to the contrary, any moneys held by the Trustee in trust for the payment of the principal of or premium, if any, or interest on any of the Bonds which remain unclaimed for five (5) years after the date when such principal, premium, if any, or interest, as the case may be, has become due and payable, either at their stated maturity dates or by call for earlier redemption or otherwise, if such moneys were held by the Trustee at such date, or for five (5) years after the date of deposit of such moneys if deposited with the Trustee after the said date when such principal, premium, if any, or interest, as the case may be, became due and payable, shall be repaid by the Trustee to the District, as its absolute property and free from trust, and the Trustee shall thereupon be released and discharged with respect thereto and the Bondholders shall look only to the District for the payment of such principal, premium, if any, or interest, as the case may be.

### **No Personal Liability**

No person, including any Bondholder, shall have any claims against the District or any of its elected or appointed officials, officers, employees, or agents for monetary damages suffered as a result of the failure of the District to perform any covenant, undertaking or obligation under the Act, the Financing Documents, or the Closing Documents, or as a result of the incorrectness of any representation in or omission from the Financing Documents or the Closing Documents, unless the District or its elected or appointed officials, officers, employees, or agents have acted in a willful and fraudulent manner.

Except as otherwise provided in Section 47-340.33 of the D.C. Official Code and the Act, the elected or appointed officials, officers, employees, or agents of the District shall not be liable personally for the payment of the Bonds or an Ancillary Bond Facility nor be subject to any personal liability by reason of the issuance or execution and delivery of the Bonds or an Ancillary Bond Facility, or for any representations, warranties, covenants, obligations, or agreement of the District contained in the Act, the Bonds, an Ancillary Bond Facility, the Financing Documents, or the Closing Documents.

### **Governing Law**

The Master Indenture shall be governed by, and construed and enforced in accordance with, the laws of the District.

## APPENDIX C

### BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM

*The information in this Appendix concerning DTC and DTC's book-entry system has been obtained from sources that the District believes to be reliable, but the District takes no responsibility for the accuracy thereof.*

The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, NY, will act as securities depository for the Series 2014A Bonds. The Series 2014A Bonds will be issued as fully-registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully registered Bond certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Series 2014A Bonds, each in the aggregate principal amount thereof, and will be deposited with DTC. If, however, the aggregate principal amount of any issue exceeds \$500 million, one certificate will be issued with respect to each \$500 million of principal amount, and an additional certificate will be issued with respect to any remaining principal amount of such issue.

DTC, the world's largest securities depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments (from over 100 countries) that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation, and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has a Standard & Poor's rating of AA+. The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at [www.dtcc.com](http://www.dtcc.com).

Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Series 2014A Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Series 2014A Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in the Series 2014A Bonds, except in the event that use of the book entry system for the Series 2014A Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be

requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co., or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Series 2014A Bonds; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Series 2014A Bonds, such as redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Bond documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Series 2014A Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of the notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Series 2014A Bonds within an issue are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such issue to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to the Series 2014A Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's MMI procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to the District as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts the Series 2014A Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

Redemption proceeds, distributions and dividend payments on the Series 2014A Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the District or the Agent on the payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC, the Agent or the District, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Payment of redemption proceeds, distributions and dividend payments to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) is the responsibility of the District or the Agent, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

A Beneficial Owner shall give notice to elect to have its Bonds purchased or tendered, through its Participant, to the Agent, and shall effect delivery of such Bonds by causing the Direct Participant to transfer the Participant's interest in the Series 2014A Bonds, on DTC's records, to the Agent. The requirement for physical delivery of Bonds in connection with an optional tender or a mandatory purchase will be deemed satisfied when the ownership rights in the Series 2014A Bonds are transferred by Direct Participants on DTC's records and followed by a book-entry credit of tendered Securities to the Agent's DTC account.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Series 2014A Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the District or the Agent. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, definitive Bonds are required to be printed and delivered.

The District may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry-only transfers through DTC (or a successor securities depository). In that event, Bond certificates will be printed and delivered to DTC.

[This page intentionally left blank]

## APPENDIX D

### FORM OF CONTINUING DISCLOSURE AGREEMENT

This Continuing Disclosure Agreement (the “Agreement”) dated September 10, 2014, is executed and delivered by the District of Columbia (the “Issuer”) in connection with the issuance and sale of the Issuer’s \$155,665,000 Income Tax Secured Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2014A (the “Bonds”), issued pursuant to the Act and the Indenture (as defined in the Official Statement). Capitalized terms used in this Agreement which are not otherwise defined in the Indenture shall have the respective meanings specified above or in Article IV hereof.

#### ARTICLE I

##### The Undertaking

**Section 1.1. Purpose.** This Agreement is being executed and delivered solely to assist the Underwriters in complying with subsection (b)(5) of the Rule.

**Section 1.2. Annual Financial Information.** (a) The Issuer shall provide Annual Financial Information with respect to each Fiscal Year of the Issuer, commencing with Fiscal Year ending September 30, 2014, by no later than five (5) months after the end of the respective Fiscal Year, to the MSRB.

(b) The Issuer shall provide, in a timely manner not in excess of ten (10) business days after the occurrence of the event, notice of any failure of the Issuer to provide the Annual Financial Information by the date specified in subsection (a) above to the MSRB.

**Section 1.3. Audited Financial Statements.** If not provided as part of Annual Financial Information by the date required by Section 1.2(a) hereof because not available, the Issuer shall provide Audited Financial Statements, when and if available, to the MSRB.

**Section 1.4. Notice Events.** (a) If a Notice Event occurs, the Issuer shall provide, in a timely manner not in excess of ten (10) business days after the occurrence of such Notice Event, notice of such Notice Event to (i) the MSRB and (ii) the Trustee.

(b) Any notice of a defeasance of Bonds shall state whether the Bonds have been escrowed to maturity or to an earlier redemption date and the timing of such maturity or redemption.

(c) Each Notice Event notice relating to the Bonds shall include the CUSIP numbers of the Bonds to which such Notice Event notice relates or, if the Notice Event notice relates to all bond issues of the Issuer including the Bonds, such Notice Event notice need only include the CUSIP number of the Issuer.

**Section 1.5. Additional Information.** Nothing in this Agreement shall be deemed to prevent the Issuer from disseminating any other information, using the means of dissemination set forth in this Agreement or any other means of communication, or including any other information in any Annual Financial Information or notice of Notice Event hereunder, in addition to that which is required by this Agreement. If the Issuer chooses to include any information in any Annual Financial Information or Notice Event notice in addition to that which is specifically required by this Agreement, the Issuer shall have no obligation under this Agreement to update such additional information or include it in any future Annual Financial Information or notice of a Notice Event hereunder.

**Section 1.6. Additional Disclosure Obligations.** The Issuer acknowledges and understands that other state and federal laws, including but not limited to the Securities Act of 1933 and Rule 10b-5 promulgated under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, may apply to the Issuer and that, under some circumstances, compliance with this Agreement without additional disclosures or other action may not fully discharge all duties and obligations of the Issuer under such laws.

**Section 1.7. Previous Non-Compliance.** The Issuer represents that, except as disclosed in the Official Statement, in the previous five years it has not failed to comply in all material respects with any previous undertaking in a written contract or agreement specified in paragraph (b)(5)(i) of the Rule.

## ARTICLE II

### Operating Rules

**Section 2.1. Reference to Other Filed Documents.** It shall be sufficient for purposes of Section 1.2 hereof if the Issuer provides Annual Financial Information by specific reference to documents (a) available to the public on the MSRB Internet Web site (currently, [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org)) or (b) filed with the SEC. The provisions of this Section shall not apply to notices of Notice Events pursuant to Section 1.4 hereof.

**Section 2.2. Submission of Information.** Annual Financial Information may be set forth or provided in one document or a set of documents, and at one time or in part from time to time.

**Section 2.3. Notice Events.** Each notice of a Notice Event hereunder shall be captioned “Notice Event” and shall prominently state the title, date and CUSIP numbers of the Bonds.

**Section 2.4. Dissemination Agents.** The Issuer may from time to time designate an agent to act on its behalf in providing or filing notices, documents and information as required of the Issuer under this Agreement, and revoke or modify any such designation.

**Section 2.5. Transmission of Notices, Documents and Information.** (a) Unless otherwise required by the MSRB, all notices, documents and information provided to the MSRB shall be provided to the MSRB’s Electronic Municipal Markets Access (EMMA) system, the current Internet Web address of which is [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

(b) All notices, documents and information provided to the MSRB shall be provided in an electronic format as prescribed by the MSRB and shall be accompanied by identifying information as prescribed by the MSRB.

**Section 2.6. Fiscal Year.** (a) The Issuer’s current Fiscal Year begins October 1 and ends on September 30, and the Issuer shall promptly notify (i) the MSRB and (ii) the Trustee of each change in its Fiscal Year.

(b) Annual Financial Information shall be provided at least annually notwithstanding any Fiscal Year longer than 12 calendar months.

## ARTICLE III

### Effective Date, Termination, Amendment and Enforcement

**Section 3.1. Effective Date; Termination.** (a) This Agreement shall be effective upon the issuance of the Bonds.

(b) The Issuer's obligations under this Agreement shall terminate upon a legal defeasance, prior redemption or payment in full of all of the Bonds.

(c) This Agreement, or any provision hereof, shall be null and void in the event that the Issuer (i) receives an opinion of Counsel to the effect that those portions of the Rule which require this Agreement, or such provision, as the case may be, do not or no longer apply to the Bonds, whether because such portions of the Rule are invalid, have been repealed, or otherwise, as shall be specified in such opinion, and (ii) delivers copies of such opinion to the MSRB.

**Section 3.2. Amendment.** (a) This Agreement may be amended, by written agreement of the parties, without the consent of the holders of the Bonds (except to the extent required under clause (4)(ii) below), if all of the following conditions are satisfied: (1) such amendment is made in connection with a change in circumstances that arises from a change in legal (including regulatory) requirements, a change in law (including rules or regulations) or in interpretations thereof, or a change in the identity, nature or status of the Issuer or the type of business conducted thereby, (2) this Agreement as so amended would have complied with the requirements of the Rule as of the date of this Agreement, after taking into account any amendments to or interpretations of the Rule, as well as any change in circumstances, (3) the Issuer shall have received an opinion of Counsel to the same effect as set forth in clause (2) above, (4) either (i) the Issuer shall have received an opinion of Counsel or a determination by an entity, in each case unaffiliated with the Issuer (such as bond counsel or the Trustee), to the effect that the amendment does not materially impair the interests of the holders of the Bonds, or (ii) the holders of the Bonds consent to the amendment to this Agreement pursuant to the same procedures as are required for amendments to the Indenture with consent of holders of Bonds pursuant to the terms of the Indenture as in effect at the time of the amendment, and (5) the Issuer shall have delivered copies of such opinion(s) and amendment to the MSRB.

(b) This Agreement may be amended, by written agreement of the parties, without the consent of the holders of the Bonds, if all of the following conditions are satisfied: (1) an amendment to the Rule is adopted, or a new or modified official interpretation of the Rule is issued, after the effective date of this Agreement which is applicable to this Agreement, (2) the Issuer shall have received an opinion of Counsel to the effect that performance by the Issuer under this Agreement as so amended will not result in a violation of the Rule and (3) the Issuer shall have delivered copies of such opinion and amendment to the MSRB.

(c) This Agreement may be amended by written agreement of the parties, without the consent of the holders of the Bonds, if all of the following conditions are satisfied: (1) the Issuer shall have received an opinion of Counsel to the effect that the amendment is permitted by rule, order or other official pronouncement, or is consistent with any interpretive advice or no-action positions of Staff, of the SEC, and (2) the Issuer shall have delivered copies of such opinion and amendment to the MSRB.

(d) To the extent any amendment to this Agreement results in a change in the type of financial information or operating data provided pursuant to this Agreement, the first Annual Financial Information provided thereafter shall include a narrative explanation of the reasons for the amendment and the impact of the change in the type of operating data or financial information being provided.

(e) If an amendment is made pursuant to Section 3.2(a) hereof to the accounting principles to be followed by the Issuer in preparing its financial statements, the Annual Financial Information for the Fiscal Year in which the change is made shall present a comparison between the financial statements or information prepared on the basis of the new accounting principles and those prepared on the basis of the former accounting principles. Such comparison shall include a qualitative and, to the extent reasonably feasible, quantitative discussion of the differences in the accounting principles and the impact of the change in the accounting principles on the presentation of the financial information.

**Section 3.3. Benefit; Third-Party Beneficiaries; Enforcement.** (a) The provisions of this Agreement shall constitute a contract with and inure solely to the benefit of the holders from time to time of the Bonds, except that beneficial owners of Bonds shall be third-party beneficiaries of this Agreement. The provisions of this Agreement shall create no rights in any person or entity except as provided in this subsection (a) and in subsection (b) of this Section.

(b) The obligations of the Issuer to comply with the provisions of this Agreement shall be enforceable by any holder of Outstanding Bonds. The holders' rights to enforce the provisions of this Agreement shall be limited solely to a right, by action in mandamus or for specific performance, to compel performance of the Issuer's obligations under this Agreement. In consideration of the third-party beneficiary status of beneficial owners of Bonds pursuant to subsection (a) of this Section, beneficial owners shall be deemed to be holders of Bonds for purposes of this subsection (b).

(c) Any failure by the Issuer to perform in accordance with this Agreement shall not constitute a default or an Event of Default under the Indenture, and the rights and remedies provided by the Indenture upon the occurrence of a default or an Event of Default shall not apply to any such failure.

(d) This Agreement shall be construed and interpreted in accordance with the laws of the District of Columbia, and any suits and actions arising out of this Agreement shall be instituted in a court of competent jurisdiction in the District of Columbia; provided, however, that to the extent this Agreement addresses matters of federal securities laws, including the Rule, this Agreement shall be construed in accordance with such federal securities laws and official interpretations thereof.

## ARTICLE IV

### Definitions

**Section 4.1. Definitions.** The following terms used in this Agreement shall have the following respective meanings:

(a) "Annual Financial Information" means, collectively, (1) updated versions of the following financial information and operating data contained in the Official Statement, for each Fiscal Year of the Issuer, as follows:

(i) Audited Financial Statements, if available, or Unaudited Financial Statements for the immediately preceding Fiscal Year; and

(ii) the Issuer's Comprehensive Annual Financial Report, if any is prepared, for the immediately preceding Fiscal Year, and if not prepared, such annual financial information as the Issuer is advised by disclosure counsel or bond counsel would satisfy the definition of "annual financial information" in the Rule; and

(iii) The tables in the Official Statement entitled (a) Table 5 - Pledged Tax Collections, Fiscal Years 2004-2013, (b) Table 6 - Pledged Taxes Rates, Fiscal Years 2004-2014, (c) Table 7 - Pledged Taxes Collections, Approved Budget to Actual, (d) Table 8 - Projected Available Tax Revenues, (e) Table 9 - Projected Debt Service Coverage, and (f) Table 10 - Pledged Taxes Collections, as received by Collection Agent and by District, Fiscal Years 2012-2014; and

(iv) the information regarding amendments to this Agreement required pursuant to Sections 3.2(d) and (e) of this Agreement.

Annual Financial Information shall include Audited Financial Statements, if available, or Unaudited Financial Statements.

The descriptions contained in Section 4.1(a) hereof of financial information and operating data constituting Annual Financial Information are of general categories of financial information and operating data. When such descriptions include information that no longer can be generated because the operations to which it related have been materially changed or discontinued, a statement to that effect shall be provided in lieu of such information. Any Annual Financial Information containing modified financial information or operating data shall explain, in narrative form, the reasons for the modification and the impact of the modification on the type of financial information or operating data being provided.

(b) “Audited Financial Statements” means the annual financial statements, if any, of the Issuer, audited by such auditor as selected by the Inspector General or as shall otherwise then be required or permitted by District of Columbia or federal law or the Indenture. Audited Financial Statements shall be prepared in accordance with GAAP; provided, however, that pursuant to Sections 3.2(a) and (e) hereof, the Issuer may from time to time, if required by federal or District of Columbia legal requirements, modify the accounting principles to be followed in preparing its financial statements. The notice of any such modification required by Section 3.2(a) hereof shall include a reference to the specific federal or District of Columbia law or regulation describing such accounting principles, or other description thereof.

(c) “Counsel” means any nationally recognized bond counsel or counsel expert in federal securities laws.

(d) “GAAP” means generally accepted accounting principles as prescribed from time to time for governmental units by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, the Financial Accounting Standards Board, or any successor to the duties and responsibilities of either of them.

(e) “MSRB” means the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board established pursuant to Section 15B(b)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or any successor thereto or to the functions of the MSRB contemplated by this Agreement.

(f) “Notice Event” means any of the following events with respect to the Bonds, whether relating to the Issuer or otherwise:

- (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies;
- (2) non-payment related defaults, if material;
- (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties;

- (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties;
- (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform;
- (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB) or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds;
- (7) modifications to rights of Bondholders, if material;
- (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers;
- (9) defeasances;
- (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material;
- (11) rating changes;
- (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or similar event;
- (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Issuer or the sale of all or substantially all of the assets of the Issuer, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and
- (14) appointment of a successor or additional trustee or the change of name of a trustee, if material.

With regard to the reportable event described in subsection 4.1(f)(12) above, the event is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent or similar officer for the Issuer in a proceeding under the U.S. Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Issuer, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Issuer.

(g) “Official Statement” means the Official Statement dated August 19, 2014, of the Issuer relating to the Bonds.

(h) “Rule” means Rule 15c2-12 promulgated by the SEC under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (17 CFR Part 240, §240.15c2-12), as amended, as in effect on the date of this Agreement, including any official interpretations thereof issued either before or after the effective date of this Agreement which are applicable to this Agreement.

(i) “SEC” means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

(j) “Unaudited Financial Statements” means the same as Audited Financial Statements, except that they shall not have been audited.

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Jeffrey Barnette  
Deputy Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer

[This page intentionally left blank]

**PART 2**

**of the**

**OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

**of the**

**DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA**

**relating to its**

**INCOME TAX SECURED REVENUE REFUNDING BONDS,  
SERIES 2014A**

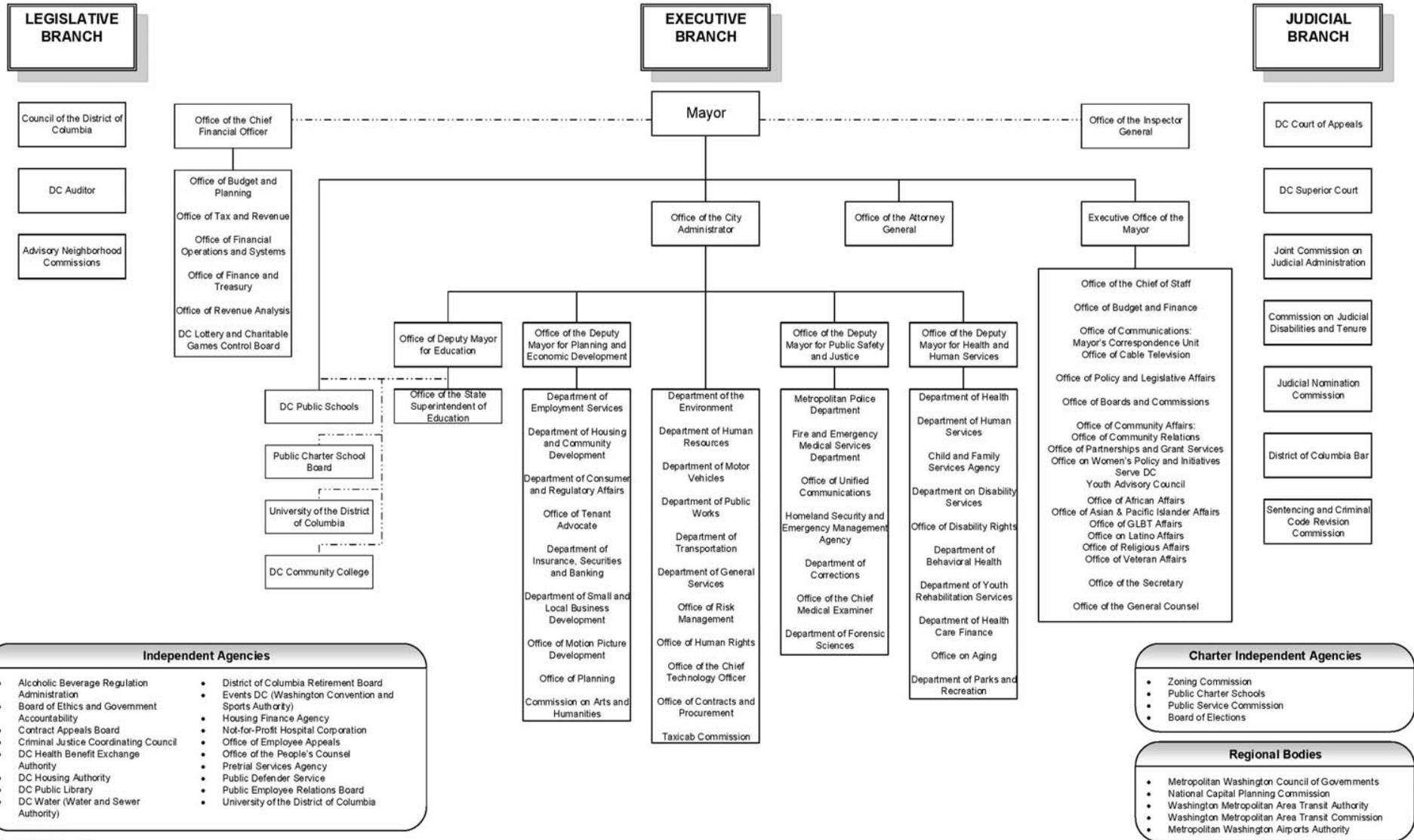
[This page intentionally left blank]

**TABLE OF CONTENTS  
FOR PART 2**

	<b>PAGE</b>
<b>THE DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.....</b>	<b>1</b>
CREATION AND CHARTER.....	1
ORGANIZATION OF THE DISTRICT GOVERNMENT .....	1
CONGRESSIONAL AUTHORITY .....	5
THE AUTHORITY.....	6
FEDERAL FUNDING.....	6
<b>DISTRICT TAXES.....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>CERTAIN DISTRICT FINANCIAL INFORMATION .....</b>	<b>14</b>
FINANCIAL STATEMENTS.....	14
REVENUES AND EXPENDITURES .....	14
FISCAL YEAR 2014 AND 2015 BUDGETS.....	17
CAPITAL BUDGETING AND FINANCING .....	18
CASH RESERVES .....	20
<b>RETIREMENT PROGRAMS.....</b>	<b>24</b>
PENSION AND RETIREMENT PLANS NOT SPONSORED BY THE DISTRICT .....	24
PENSION AND RETIREMENT PLANS SPONSORED BY THE DISTRICT .....	24
FUNDED STATUS AND FUNDING PROGRESS .....	30
ANNUAL REQUIRED CONTRIBUTIONS.....	30
INVESTMENTS.....	31
RECENT CHANGES TO PENSION OBLIGATION REPORTING .....	31
OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS .....	32
INDEBTEDNESS .....	33
Summary of Statutory Debt Provisions.....	33
Long-Term Obligations.....	34
Other Capital Funding.....	41
Short-Term Obligations .....	41
<b>THE DISTRICT’S ECONOMIC RESOURCES.....</b>	<b>43</b>
Population .....	43
Employment and Industry .....	44



# GOVERNMENT OF THE DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA



## THE DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA

### Creation and Charter

The District of Columbia (the “District”) was created in 1791 by act of the United States Congress (the “Congress”) and Presidential proclamation and has served as the capital of the United States of America since 1800. Under Article I, Section 8 of the United States Constitution, Congress has exclusive legislative authority over the District as the Nation’s Capital. Since January 2, 1975, the District has been governed in accordance with the District of Columbia Home Rule Act, Pub. L. 93-198, an Act of Congress signed by the President of the United States (the “President”) on December 24, 1973, as amended (the “Home Rule Act”). Under the Home Rule Act, the District is governed by an elected Mayor and an elected Council. With limited exceptions, including the payment of debt service on District debt, the District may not obligate or expend funds absent annual Congressional appropriation.

The District is a unique governmental entity, combining state, county and municipal characteristics. Functions performed by the District government include public safety, police, fire, corrections, consumer and business regulatory affairs, public works (highways, streets and traffic control and sanitation), human services (health, welfare and employment assistance), leisure services (recreation and libraries), economic development (planning, zoning, urban renewal and housing), public education and general administration. The District and its instrumentalities also operate a university, a hospital, a stadium and armory complex, a convention center, a water and sewer system, a housing finance agency and a lottery.

### Organization of the District Government

**Legislative Branch.** The legislative powers granted to the District by the Home Rule Act are vested in the Council of the District of Columbia (the “Council”), which consists of 13 members elected on a staggered basis for four-year terms. The Chairman of the Council and four members are elected on an “at-large” basis and each of the eight wards of the District elects one member. Six members of the Council will be elected in the next general election to be held in November 2014.

The legislative powers granted to the Council by the Home Rule Act extend to all rightful subjects of legislation within the District consistent with the United States Constitution and the Home Rule Act, and include the authority to pass laws, create and abolish any office (subject to certain protections applicable to the Office of the Chief Financial Officer and the District of Columbia Auditor pursuant to the Home Rule Act below), agency, or instrumentality of the District, define the duties of such offices, agencies and instrumentalities, and conduct investigations into matters relating to the affairs of the District. Acts of the Council are subject to approval by the Mayor. In the event of a Mayoral veto, the Council may override the veto by a two-thirds vote. Except for emergency legislation with a limited duration, acts authorizing general obligation revenue anticipation notes and acts authorizing the renewal or refunding of bond anticipation notes, all acts of the Council are subject to a period of Congressional review before they take effect.

The power of the Council to enact certain taxes or pass other legislation is subject to certain limitations set forth in the Home Rule Act. For instance, the Council cannot enact legislation that would tax, directly or at the source, the income of any individual who is not a resident of the District, or would permit the building of structures within the District that would exceed in height above the sidewalk the width of the street, avenue, or highway in its front, increased by 20 feet. In addition, the District cannot tax federal properties.

**Judicial Branch.** The judicial power of the District is vested in a Superior Court and a Court of Appeals (together, the “Courts”). The Superior Court has jurisdiction of any civil action or other matter (at law or in equity) brought in the District of Columbia and of any criminal case under any law applicable exclusively to the District. The Superior Court has no jurisdiction over any civil or criminal matter over which a United States court has exclusive jurisdiction pursuant to an Act of Congress. The Court of Appeals has jurisdiction of appeals from the Superior Court and, to the extent provided by law, to review orders and decisions of the Mayor, the Council or any agency of the District. Generally, the President nominates judges of the Courts from a list of candidates recommended by the District of Columbia Judicial Nomination Commission, and, with the advice and consent of the United States Senate, the President appoints the judges of the Courts. The federal government funds the operating and capital costs of the Courts; however, the Courts manage themselves.

**Executive Branch.** The Mayor, as the chief executive officer of the District under the Home Rule Act, is responsible for the proper execution of laws and administration of the District’s affairs. Executive functions include supervision and direction of the District’s administrative boards, offices and agencies, administration of the District’s financial affairs through appointment of the Chief Financial Officer (the “CFO”) (subject to Council approval and Congressional review), administration of personnel matters, central municipal planning, making legislative proposals to the Council, and similar matters. The Mayor also has the authority to veto legislation adopted by the Council. The Mayor is assisted in these duties by a City Administrator, who serves as the chief administrative officer of the District. The City Administrator is appointed by the Mayor and serves at the pleasure of the Mayor. A new Mayor will be elected in the next general election to be held in November 2014.

In addition to the City Administrator, the Mayor is assisted by a Deputy Mayor for Planning and Economic Development, a Deputy Mayor for Education, a Deputy Mayor for Health and Human Services, and a Deputy Mayor for Public Safety and Justice.

The Home Rule Act requires the Mayor to prepare and submit to the Council an annual budget, including, among other things, the budget for the forthcoming Fiscal Year, a multiyear plan for all agencies and all sources of funding, a multiyear capital improvement plan, a performance report comparing actual performance to goals, an issue analysis statement, and a summary of the budget for public distribution. Once the Council has approved the budget, the Mayor forwards the budget to the President for submission to Congress.

The Mayor is elected to a four-year term. If there is a vacancy in the office of the Mayor, the Chairman of the Council serves as Acting Mayor until a special election for a new Mayor is held.

**Office of the Chief Financial Officer.** The CFO has primary responsibility for oversight of the District’s budgetary and financial records, activities, and transactions, including the supervision and administration of all borrowing programs of the District for the issuance of long-term and short-term indebtedness (excluding industrial revenue bonds).

The CFO is responsible for supervising the activities of the District Treasurer, supervising and administering the District’s borrowing, administering cash management, administering the District’s payroll and retirement systems, governing the District’s accounting policies and systems, preparing certain reports on the District’s accounting and financial operations, preparing a comprehensive financial management policy for the District and preparing the financial statements and reports on the District’s activities required by the Home Rule Act. The CFO also supervises and assumes responsibility for financial transactions to ensure adequate control of revenues and resources and that appropriations are not exceeded, maintains systems of accounting and internal control, supervises and assumes responsibility for levying and collecting all taxes, fees and other revenues, maintains custody of all public funds and all

investments and invested funds, and assists the Inspector General of the District of Columbia (the “Inspector General”) in developing internal audits of accounts, operations and records of the District. In addition, the CFO is required to prepare and submit to the Mayor, for inclusion in the annual budget of the District, annual estimates of expenditures and appropriations necessary for the operation of the Office of the CFO. Further, the CFO must prepare annual estimates of all revenues of the District which are binding on the Mayor and the Council for purposes of preparing and submitting the annual budget. The CFO also prepares and submits to the Mayor and the Council, and makes public, quarterly re-estimates of the revenues of the District during the year.

The CFO oversees the Office of Finance and Treasury, the Office of Financial Operations and Systems, the Office of Budget and Planning, the Office of Tax and Revenue, the Office of Finance and Resource Management, the Office of Revenue Analysis and the District of Columbia Lottery and Charitable Games Control Board. Moreover, certain personnel performing financial functions in the District’s various agencies (including independent agencies) report to the CFO.

The Mayor, with the advice and consent of the Council, appoints the CFO for a term of five years. Upon confirmation by the Council, the appointment is submitted to the Committees on Appropriations of the Senate and the House of Representatives, the Committee on Governmental Affairs of the Senate, and the Committee on Government Reform of the House for a 30-day period of review and comment before the appointment takes effect. The CFO may be dismissed from office for cause by the Mayor and approval of that dismissal by a two-thirds vote of the Council. Upon approval of that dismissal by the Council, notice of the dismissal must be submitted to the Committees on Appropriations of the Senate and the House, the Committee on Governmental Affairs of the Senate, and the Committee on Government Reform of the House for a 30-day period of review and comment before the dismissal takes effect.

Jeffrey S. DeWitt was sworn in as the new CFO on January 2, 2014. He replaced Natwar M. Gandhi, Ph.D., who had been in office since 2001. Mr. DeWitt’s term will expire on June 30, 2017.

The Home Rule Act requires the CFO to submit quarterly estimates of all revenues of the District to the Mayor and Council. Table 1 shows the most recent revenue estimates for the District for Fiscal Years 2014-2018, which was submitted by the CFO on July 1, 2014 (the “June 2014 Revenue Estimate”). The June 2014 revenue estimates for Fiscal Years 2014 and 2015 are substantially similar to the previous forecast. Revenues are forecast to grow by 2.1 percent in Fiscal Year 2014 compared to Fiscal Year 2013. Moderate growth in Fiscal Year 2014 revenues reflects the impact of cutbacks in federal government employment and spending, although growth in the private sector is expected throughout the forecast period. In Fiscal Year 2015, revenue growth is expected to increase by 5.6 percent, driven by overall strength in the economy and a significant rebound in property values which results in a forecast growth in property taxes of 8.2 percent in Fiscal Year 2015. The June 2014 Revenue Estimate did not take into account various tax reductions approved by the Council in July 2014. See “DISTRICT TAXES” herein.

**Table 1. Local Source, General Fund Revenue Estimates**  
(\$ in millions)

	<u>Fiscal Year</u>				
	<u>2014</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2018</u>
February 2013 Revenue Estimate	\$6,134.8	\$6,273.4	\$6,449.4	\$6,574.0	-
June 2013 Revenue Estimate	\$6,227.1	\$6,393.0	\$6,577.0	\$6,748.6	-
September 2013 Revenue Estimate	\$6,311.6	\$6,508.8	\$6,697.6	\$6,880.1	-
December 2013 Revenue Estimate	\$6,331.4	\$6,551.5	\$6,763.6	\$6,974.7	-
February 2014 Revenue Estimate	\$6,334.1	\$6,690.7	\$6,896.3	\$7,119.5	\$7,276.2
June 2014 Revenue Estimate <sup>(1)</sup>	\$6,334.1	\$6,690.7	\$6,896.3	\$7,119.5	\$7,276.2

<sup>(1)</sup> The June 2014 Revenue Estimate did not include the tax reductions approved by the Council in July 2014, some of which will take effect in Fiscal Year 2015, and some of which are subject to implementation in Fiscal Year 2016 and beyond only after certain revenue triggers have been achieved. See “DISTRICT TAXES” herein for a further description of the various tax reductions.

All references herein to financial information or results for any year after Fiscal Year 2013 are preliminary, unaudited and subject to change.

**Inspector General.** The Inspector General is charged with conducting independent fiscal and management audits of District government operations, among other duties. The Inspector General must contract for an outside audit of the complete financial statements and report on the activities of the District for each Fiscal Year, and establish an annual plan for audits of District programs during the Fiscal Year. The Inspector General may issue subpoenas relating to any matter under investigation and has the right to access all necessary District records relating to an investigation. Whenever the Inspector General has reasonable grounds to believe that there has been a violation of federal or District criminal law, he or she is required to report the matter expeditiously to the Office of the United States Attorney for the District of Columbia.

The Mayor appoints the Inspector General with the advice and consent of the Council for a six-year term. The Inspector General is subject to removal only for cause by the Mayor with the advice and consent of the Council. Neither the Mayor nor the Council may revise the proposed budget for the Office of the Inspector General (“OIG”), but they may make recommendations to Congress regarding the proposed budget. The current Inspector General is serving in an interim capacity.

**District Auditor.** The District of Columbia Auditor (the “District Auditor”) is appointed for a term of six years and is responsible for an annual audit of the District’s accounts and operations. The District Auditor is appointed by the Chairman of the Council, subject to the approval of a majority of the Council. The District Auditor is required to submit audit reports and recommendations to the Council, the Mayor and the Congress. The District Auditor has access to all books, accounts, records, reports, findings and all other papers, things, or property belonging to or in use by any department, agency, or other instrumentality of the District government and necessary to facilitate the audit. The Mayor is required to state in writing to the Council what action he or she has taken to effectuate the recommendations made in the District Auditor’s reports.

The District Auditor also is required to certify the Mayor’s estimate of local revenues for purposes of the general obligation bond debt limitation.

**Office of Integrity and Oversight.** In 2003, the CFO created an Office of Integrity and Oversight (“OIO”) for the purpose of conducting regular audits of the office of the CFO operations, identifying those operational procedures and processes that need to be modified, updated or strengthened,

recommending appropriate changes and monitoring the implementation of those changes. Such audits are in addition to the investigative audits conducted by the OIG, the District Auditor and the District's independent outside auditors.

Certain press reports in 2012 criticized the non-release of an OIO audit that had concluded incorrectly that there was no audit trail of changes senior managers made to real property assessments when those managers approved or rejected the proposed actions of subordinate managers. An amended report corrected the initial report to confirm that there was such an audit trail. The Council conducted a hearing on October 12, 2012, at which no improper actions were found but during which concerns were expressed about additional ways to strengthen the process. On October 16, 2012, the Council adopted emergency legislation directing submission to the Mayor and Council of: (1) all OIO audits and reports within 15 days of completion; (2) a list of all incomplete or on-going audits quarterly; and (3) the annual audit plan on each October 1. In addition, the CFO is required to post all completed audits and reports on the CFO website within 15 days of completion. See <http://cfo.dc.gov/page/audit-reports/>.

On October 22, 2012, the office of the CFO received an "informal inquiry request" letter from the staff of the Municipal Securities and Public Pensions Fund Unit of the Division of Enforcement of the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") requesting, in principal part, copies of all audits, inspections, reviews, and investigations (including drafts) conducted by the OIO during the period January 1, 2010 through October 19, 2012, related or referring to the CFO's Offices of Finance and Treasury, Tax and Revenue, and Financial Operations and Systems. The CFO has provided all materials requested by the SEC and no further action or request for information has been reported to the District by the SEC as of the date of this Official Statement.

### **Congressional Authority**

Notwithstanding the Home Rule Act's delegation to the District of authority for self-government, Congress reserves the right to exercise its Constitutional authority as the legislature for the District by enacting legislation on any subject, whether within or without the scope of legislative power granted to the Council by the Home Rule Act, including legislation to amend or repeal any law in force in the District prior to or after enactment of the Home Rule Act and any act passed by the Council. Such legislative authority is subject to Constitutional limitations on the powers of the United States government.

The Home Rule Act provides, with exceptions for emergency legislation, acts authorizing general obligation revenue anticipation notes and acts authorizing the renewal or refunding of bond anticipation notes, that no act passed by the Council and approved either by the Mayor or through veto override by the Council shall take effect until the expiration of a period of 30 legislative days (for acts on civil matters) or 60 legislative days (for acts on criminal matters) after transmittal to Congress. During such periods, Congress and the President may disapprove an act of the Council by enacting a joint resolution of Congress approved by the President, in which event the act will not become effective. Congress, from time to time, at the request of the District, has enacted legislation waiving the legislative layover period for certain District legislation.

Disapproval of an act of the Council by Congress has occurred infrequently. Congress, however, has made revisions to the District's budget as adopted by the Council, and generally has conditioned its approval of the District's budget on compliance by the District with a variety of Congressional mandates.

## **The Authority**

Pursuant to the District of Columbia Financial Responsibility and Management Assistance Act of 1995, Pub. L. 104-8, as amended (the “Authority Act”), the District of Columbia Financial Responsibility and Management Assistance Authority (the “Authority”) was established. Without repealing the District’s Mayor/Council government structure, the Authority Act granted the Authority substantial powers over the financial activities and management operations of the District government during any “Control Period” and “Control Year” as defined in the Authority Act. The initial Control Period terminated on February 14, 2001 and the Authority suspended its activities on September 30, 2001. Under the provisions of the Authority Act, a new Control Period will be initiated if: (i) the Mayor seeks a U.S. Treasury advance; (ii) the District defaults with respect to any loan, bond, note, or other form of borrowing; (iii) the District fails to meet its payroll for any pay period; (iv) at the end of any quarter of any Fiscal Year, a cash deficit exists that exceeds the difference between the estimated District revenues and estimated District expenditures during the remainder of that Fiscal Year or the remainder of that Fiscal Year together with the first six months of the succeeding Fiscal Year; (v) the District fails to make required payments relating to pensions and benefits for current and former District government employees; or (vi) the District fails to make payments to any entity under an interstate compact to which the District is a signatory. If a new Control Period were to be initiated under the existing Authority Act, the Authority would be reconstituted and resume its full statutory powers.

## **Federal Funding**

The federal government assumes the costs of certain District state-like functions, such as the Courts and incarceration of convicted felons, that do not appear in the District’s budget. The federal government also provides revenues to the District for other functions and for certain programs, such as Medicaid, school improvements and the Tuition Assistance Grant program, which do appear in the District’s budget. In Fiscal Year 2013, the District directly received federal revenues in the total aggregate amount of approximately \$3.5 billion. See Table 2 below and Exhibits 2-b and 2-d, and Notes 9 and 13 to the FY 2013 Financial Statements.

The federal government also provides many services required for its own operations within the District of Columbia or for the benefit of visitors to the Nation’s Capital. The federal government operates and maintains its own buildings, national monuments and parks, and it provides financial support to visitor attractions such as the National Gallery of Art, the Smithsonian Institution, and the National Zoo. The federal government also maintains special police forces and guard services to protect the White House, the Capitol, the Supreme Court, other federal facilities and foreign embassies and missions.

Federal funding received by the District could be adversely affected by implementation of certain provisions of the Budget Control Act of 2011 (Pub. L. 112-25) (the “Budget Control Act”), which was signed into law by the President on August 2, 2011. As a result of the failure of the Joint Select Committee on Deficit Reduction to reach an agreement on the deficit reduction actions as required by the Budget Control Act, sequestration - a unique budgetary feature of the Budget Control Act - has been triggered. Sequestration was implemented beginning in Fiscal Year 2013, resulting in automatic cuts to federal spending for designated agencies and programs of \$1.2 trillion. These federal spending cuts are to be spread evenly over Fiscal Years 2013 through 2021. Sequestration could adversely affect the availability of certain federal funds typically received annually by the District. Portions of certain federal programs, including Medicaid and federal spending for highways, to the extent otherwise subject to obligation limitations, are currently exempt from sequestration. The District does not know the exact impact sequestration had on the amount of federal funds received by the District in Fiscal Year 2013 or expected to be received in Fiscal Year 2014. The District has estimated a potential annual reduction of approximately \$40 million of federal grant revenues, and \$10 million of federal payments for Fiscal Years

2013 through 2021. The final effect on Fiscal Year 2013 might have been less than estimated because the sequestration took effect after the Fiscal Year had begun and some grants, especially education grants, already had been made to the District. Even if sequestration is modified, the District may face reduced federal grant awards in future years as a result of overall efforts to control federal spending. The reduction to federal grant revenues is a separate issue from the estimated effects of sequestration, or other potential federal cutbacks, on the District's local funds revenues as a result of reduced federal activity in the District of Columbia and the region.

***Federal Direct Subsidy Payments.*** The District issued its Income Tax Secured Revenue Bonds, Series 2009E, Income Tax Secured Revenue Bonds, Series 2010F and General Obligation Bonds, Series 2010A as BABs (as defined below) (collectively, the "District BABs"). The District issued its Income Tax Secured Revenue Bonds, Series 2010D as QSCBs (as defined below) (together with the District BABs, the "Direct Subsidy Bonds"). Federal direct subsidy payments are available to the District to support debt service payments on the Direct Subsidy Bonds.

As part of ARRA (as defined below), Congress added provisions to the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code") that permitted state or local governments to issue bonds as "build America bonds" or "BABs." BABs were required to meet certain requirements of the Code and the related Treasury regulations, and the issuer was required to make an irrevocable election to have the special rule for qualified bonds apply. Interest on BABs is not excluded from gross income for purposes of federal income taxation.

Under the Code, an issuer of BABs could apply to receive direct subsidy payments from the Secretary of the United States Department of the Treasury (the "Treasury"). To receive a direct subsidy payment for BABs, under existing procedures, the issuer of the BABs must file a tax return (designated as Form 8038-CP) between 90 and 45 days prior to the corresponding bond interest payment date, with such issuer to receive the direct subsidy payment contemporaneously with the interest payment date with respect to such bond. Depending on the timing of the filing and other factors, the direct subsidy payment on BABs may be received before or after the corresponding interest payment date.

Under the Code, an issuer also may issue "qualified school construction bonds" or "QSCBs," the proceeds of which may be used to construct, rehabilitate, or repair a public school facility, to acquire land provided that the facility to be constructed with the same issue of QSCBs will be located on the land, and to acquire equipment or furniture provided that the equipment or furniture is to be used in the portion of the public school facility that is being constructed, rehabilitated or repaired with the proceeds of the QSCBs. These bonds may be issued by a state or local government within the jurisdiction in which the public school facility is located and bond proceeds are required to be spent for a facility located within the jurisdiction of the issuer. Issuers of QSCBs may elect to receive direct subsidy payments from the Treasury for interest payments on QSCBs. The District made such an election for its issuance of QSCBs.

The direct subsidy payments scheduled to be paid to the District in Fiscal Years 2014 and 2015 (prior to any impact of sequestration) are approximately \$20.0 million and \$19.9 million, respectively. Direct subsidy payments are not reflected in Table 2 below.

There can be no assurances that the District will receive the direct subsidy payments on the Direct Subsidy Bonds, as such payments do not constitute a full faith and credit guarantee of the United States of America. Direct subsidy payments are required to be paid by the Treasury under ARRA. The amount of any direct subsidy payment is subject to change by Congress. The direct subsidy payments will only be paid if the Direct Subsidy Bonds continue to be qualified under federal requirements. The District is obligated to make all payments of principal and interest on the Direct Subsidy Bonds whether or not it receives the direct subsidy payments from the Treasury.

Direct subsidy payments are also subject to offset against certain amounts that may, for unrelated reasons, be owed by the District to an agency of the government of the United States of America. Any such offset would occur as part of the Treasury’s Offset Program, which collects delinquent amounts due to federal agencies and states in accordance with 26 U.S.C. §6402(d), 31 U.S.C. §3720A and other applicable laws. From time to time payments of various amounts due to the District, including direct subsidy payments, have been delayed by the federal government pending resolution of a particular claim or dispute. In each case, the District has promptly resolved the matter.

Sequestration also affected the amount of direct subsidy payments received by the District. According to the Office of Management and Budget, budget cuts resulting from sequestration amounted to a 5.1% reduction in direct subsidy payments in Fiscal Year 2013. However, the District experienced a direct subsidy payment reduction in Fiscal Year 2013 of approximately \$878,000, or 4.35%. Federal budget cuts in Fiscal Year 2014 related to sequestration will reduce the expected direct subsidy payments to the District by 7.2% or approximately \$1.44 million. In Fiscal Year 2015, the reduction in direct subsidy payments to the District is expected to be 7.3%, or \$1.45 million.

**Table 2. Federal Revenues, by Category**  
Fiscal Year 2013  
(\$000s)

Pension Contributions <sup>(1)</sup>	\$495,900	
Federal Payments in the District’s Budget, Operating	59,138	
Federal Payments in the District’s Budget, Capital	0	
Federal Payments, Total:		555,038
Federal Operating Grants:		2,721,776
Federal Capital Grants:		270,813
<b>Total</b>		<b><u>\$3,547,627</u></b>

(1) Pension contributions do not pass through the District’s budget. Pension contributions are for Police, Firefighter and Teacher Retirement Funds, for liabilities the federal government assumed through the National Capital Revitalization and Self-Government Improvement Act of 1997, Pub. L. 105-33.

Sources: District’s CAFR for Fiscal Year 2013 and reports from the District’s financial system.

**American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009.** On February 17, 2009, the President signed into law the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 (“ARRA”), a national economic stimulus bill. For Fiscal Years 2009 through 2011, the District estimates that it has benefited directly and indirectly from approximately \$1.26 billion of net federal ARRA expenditures. Included in this total are amounts from State Fiscal Stabilization Funds (“SFSF”), Medicaid Federal Medical Assistance Percentage (“FMAP”) increases, federal operating grants, federal capital grants, unemployment trust funds and funding for the District of Columbia Water and Sewer Authority (“DC Water”), the Washington Metropolitan Area Transit Authority and the District of Columbia Housing Authority.

In Fiscal Year 2009, the District received approximately \$178 million of ARRA-related grant awards in its operating and capital funds. The District received approximately \$446 million in ARRA-related awards in Fiscal Year 2010 and approximately \$215 million in ARRA-related awards in Fiscal Year 2011. Because the SFSF funds and the FMAP increase have expired, ARRA funds have been significantly lower since Fiscal Year 2011.

**Federal Payments.** The federal government provides the District with federal payments to pay for certain specified purposes, such as school improvements and the Tuition Assistance Grant program. The District received federal payment revenues of approximately \$173 million in Fiscal Year 2009, \$151 million in Fiscal Year 2010, \$126 million in Fiscal Year 2011, \$74 million in Fiscal Year 2012 and \$59

million in Fiscal Year 2013. In addition to these amounts, the federal government contributed approximately \$400 million for certain retirement programs for District employees in Fiscal Year 2009, \$519 million in Fiscal Year 2010, \$492 million in Fiscal Year 2011, \$482 million in Fiscal Year 2012 and \$496 million in Fiscal Year 2013, which amounts were paid directly by the federal government and were not part of the District's budget.

**Federal Grants.** The District, similar to most states, participates in a number of federal programs that are funded through formula and project grants, direct payments for specified and unrestricted use, food stamps and other pass-through grants and direct and guaranteed loans. The federal government provided federal operating grants to the District (other than the SFSF and FMAP increases within ARRA) in the amount of approximately \$2.1 billion in Fiscal Year 2009, \$2.2 billion in Fiscal Year 2010, \$2.4 billion in Fiscal Year 2011, \$2.6 billion in Fiscal Year 2012 and \$2.7 billion in Fiscal Year 2013. Capital grants to the District, which are used to purchase or construct fixed assets, such as land, utility plants, buildings and equipment, totaled approximately \$152.6 million for Fiscal Year 2009, \$244.3 million in Fiscal Year 2010, \$173.0 million in Fiscal Year 2011, \$261.4 million in Fiscal Year 2012 and \$270.8 million in Fiscal Year 2013, the bulk of which were United States Highway Trust Fund moneys provided for public infrastructure improvements.

The District is currently working with the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development ("HUD") to resolve issues with respect to approximately \$28.5 million of Community Development Block Grant ("CDBG") funds received by the Department of Housing and Community Development ("DHCD") over a nine-year period. This amount represents less than 10% of the over \$390 million of CDBG funds and associated program income received by the District over the relevant years. On February 27, 2013, DHCD submitted a letter to HUD with documentation in support of the expenditures. As of the date of this Official Statement, there has been no response from HUD. The District has not made any repayments to HUD related to this issue. While the possibility exists that the District may have to repay some or all of these funds, to date, no request for repayment has been made. If such a request is made, the District would have the right to appeal to reduce or eliminate any such amounts requested to be repaid.

## **DISTRICT TAXES**

The following tables show the rates of the major taxes of the District, including the Pledged Taxes (as defined in Part 1 of this Official Statement), and the amounts collected for Fiscal Years 2010-2014.

**Table 3. Major Tax Rates**  
Fiscal Years 2010-2014

	<u>2010</u>	<u>2011</u>	<u>2012</u>	<u>2013</u>	<u>2014</u>
<b>Property<sup>(1)</sup></b>					
<b>Real</b>					
<b>Class 1</b>	0.85	0.85	0.85	0.85	0.85
<b>Class 2</b>	1.65/1.85 <sup>(2)</sup>				
<b>Class 3</b>	10.00	5.00	5.00	5.00	5.00
<b>Class 4</b>	n/a	10.00	10.00	10.00	10.00
<b>Personal</b>	3.40	3.40	3.40	3.40	3.40
<b>Sales and Use<sup>(3)</sup></b>					
<b>General<sup>(4)</sup></b>	0.06	0.06	0.06	0.06	0.0575
<b>Selective</b>					
<b>Cigarettes<sup>(5)</sup></b>	2.50	2.50	2.86 <sup>(6)</sup>	2.86 <sup>(6)</sup>	2.86 <sup>(6)</sup>
<b>Motor Fuel<sup>(7)</sup></b>	0.235	0.235	0.235	0.235	0.235
<b>Income and Receipts<sup>(8)</sup></b>					
<b>Individual</b>	0.04-0.085	0.04-0.085	0.04-0.0895	0.04-0.0895	0.04-0.0895
<b>Business</b>	0.09975	0.09975	0.09975	0.09975	0.09975
<b>Gross Receipts</b>					
<b>Public Utility<sup>(9)</sup></b>					
<b>Residential Customers<sup>(10)</sup></b>	0.10	0.10	0.10	0.10	0.10
<b>Non-Residential Customers<sup>(11)</sup></b>	0.11	0.11	0.11	0.11	0.11
<b>Public Utility (Electrical)<sup>(12)</sup></b>					
<b>Residential Customers</b>	0.0070	0.0070	0.0070	0.0070	0.0070
<b>Non-Residential Customers</b>	0.0077 <sup>(13)</sup>				
<b>Ballpark Fee<sup>(14)</sup></b>	\$5,500-16,500	\$5,500-16,500	\$5,500-16,500	\$5,500-16,500	\$5,500-16,500

- (1) Per \$100 of assessed value. Property Tax rates represent the aggregate of the Real Property Tax rate and the Special Real Property Tax rate. For the purpose of levying taxes on real property in the District of Columbia, the Council may establish different classes of real property. For Fiscal Years 2011 and 2012, Class 1 is comprised of residential real property that is improved and whose legal use (or in the absence of use, its highest and best permitted legal use) is for nontransient residential dwelling purposes; Class 2 is comprised of all real property that is not classified as Class 1, Class 3 or Class 4 property (being principally commercial real property); Class 3 is comprised of all improved real property that appears on the list of registered vacant properties submitted semiannually by the Mayor to the Office of Tax and Revenue; and Class 4 is comprised of all improved real property that appears on the list of blighted vacant properties submitted semiannually by the Mayor to the Office of Tax and Revenue.
- (2) \$1.65 for each \$100 of assessed value for the first \$3 million of assessed value and \$1.85 for the portion of assessed value exceeding \$3 million.
- (3) A portion of sales and use taxes on restaurant meals and hotel accommodations is dedicated to paying debt service on revenue bonds issued by the WCSA and its predecessor, the WCCA, to finance the Walter E. Washington Convention Center and a hotel in connection with the Convention Center and to paying operating expenses of WCSA.
- (4) Per \$1 of general sales. Does not include the additional 4.25% Ballpark Sales Tax (as defined below) or taxes on lodging, restaurants, parking or tangible personal property or services by legitimate theaters, or by entertainment venues with 10,000 or more seats.
- (5) Dollars (\$) per pack.
- (6) Beginning in 2012, a wholesale surcharge of \$0.36 was added to the \$2.50 per pack stamp tax on cigarettes. This surcharge will be reviewed and adjusted as necessary annually in March.
- (7) Dollars (\$) per gallon.
- (8) Per \$1 of taxable income.
- (9) Per \$1 of gross receipts. Applies to companies selling natural gas, landline telephone service, toll telecommunications service, mobile telecommunications service, heating oil and artificial gas.
- (10) Each gas company that provides distribution services to customers in the District of Columbia is required to pay a tax of \$0.0707 for each therm of natural gas delivered to end-users in the District of Columbia and each person who delivers heating oil to an end-user in the District of Columbia is required to pay a tax of \$0.17 for each gallon of home heating oil delivered to end-users in the District of Columbia for the preceding billing period.
- (11) One-eleventh of the non-residential tax is deposited into the District's Ballpark Revenue Fund (as defined below) to be used for debt service on bonds issued by the District (the "Ballpark Bonds") to fund the construction of a baseball stadium. In addition, each gas company that provides distribution services to customers in the District of Columbia is required to pay a tax of \$0.0777 for each therm of natural gas delivered to non-residential end-users in the District of Columbia, of which \$0.00707 for each therm is required to be deposited into the District's Ballpark Revenue Fund. Each person who delivers heating oil to an end-user in the District of Columbia is required to pay a tax of \$0.187 for each gallon of home heating oil delivered to non-residential end-users in the District, of which \$0.017 for each gallon is required to be deposited into the District's Ballpark Revenue Fund.
- (12) \$0.007 per Kilowatt-hour of electricity delivered to end-users in the District.
- (13) \$0.0007 of the tax collected for every kilowatt-hour of electricity delivered to non-residential end-users in the District of Columbia is deposited in the Ballpark Revenue Fund to be used for debt service on the Ballpark Bonds.
- (14) The Ballpark Fee is a gross receipts fee that is levied on businesses within the District of Columbia with \$5 million or more in annual District gross receipts and are either subject to filing franchise tax returns (whether corporate or unincorporated) or are employers required to make unemployment insurance contributions, in accordance with the following schedule: for gross receipts totaling \$5,000,000 to \$8,000,000, the required fee is \$5,500; for gross receipts totaling \$8,000,001 to \$12,000,000, the required fee is \$10,800; for gross receipts totaling \$12,000,001 to \$16,000,000, the required fee is \$14,000; and for gross receipts greater than \$16,000,001, the fee is \$16,500.

The Council contemplated certain tax cuts and changes set forth in the Fiscal Year 2015 Budget Support Emergency Act of 2014, enacted July 14, 2014 (D.C. Act 20-377) (the “Emergency BSA”) and the Fiscal Year 2015 Budget Support Act of 2014 (Bill 20-750) (the “FY15 BSA”, together with the Emergency BSA, the “BSA”). The Emergency BSA is effective from July 14, 2014 through October 12, 2014 and does not require Congressional review. The FY15 BSA was approved by the Council on July 14, 2014 but has not yet been transmitted to the Mayor for consideration. After it is transmitted to the Mayor, if the Mayor approves the FY15 BSA, it will be subject to review by Congress before taking effect. If the Mayor disapproves the FY15 BSA, the Council may override the Mayor’s disapproval pursuant to the Home Rule Act and the act so reenacted will then be subject to review by Congress before taking effect. Unless disapproved by Congress during the 30-Congressional day review period or otherwise amended by Congress, the tax cuts and changes will take effect on the applicable effective dates set forth in the FY15 BSA, or if no specific effective dates are stated in the FY15 BSA, on the date the FY15 BSA takes effect. However, if the FY15 BSA takes effect after the effective date for certain tax cuts and changes set forth in the FY15 BSA it may delay implementation of these tax cuts or changes.

*Unconditional Tax Reductions and Changes.* The BSA creates a new 7% income tax rate for individual income of \$40,000 to \$60,000 and reduces the incorporated and unincorporated business tax rate to 9.4%, effective January 1, 2015. The BSA also provides tax relief for certain senior citizens based on specified factors, including age and gross income, establishes a single weighted sales apportionment factor for business income purposes, exempts certain entities that trade on their own accounts from the Unincorporated Business Franchise Tax, and institutes an income tax credit for conversion of vehicles to run on alternative fuels and installation of alternative fuel charging stations. In addition, the District’s Fiscal Year 2015 budget and financial plan provides for additional staffing at the Office of Tax and Revenue to strengthen and enhance tax collections (primarily income tax and business franchise tax). These changes are estimated to reduce District revenues by approximately \$41 million in Fiscal Year 2015. The BSA also establishes certain unconditional tax reductions and changes that do not have a fiscal impact in Fiscal Year 2015.

Table 4 on the next page describes the estimated revenue reductions for Fiscal Years 2015 through 2018 upon implementation of the unconditional tax reductions and changes, and based on calculation methods applicable to each tax category. As shown in Table 4, the unconditional tax reductions and changes are expected to result in an estimated revenue reduction of approximately \$41.0 million in Fiscal Year 2015, \$42.4 million in Fiscal Year 2016, \$44.2 million in Fiscal Year 2017 and \$41.6 million in Fiscal Year 2017. The actual changes in tax revenues could vary from these estimates.

**Table 4. Unconditional Tax Reductions and Changes  
and Estimated Revenue Reductions**  
Fiscal Years 2015-2018  
(\$ thousands)

<b>Revenue Source</b>	<b>FY 2015 Estimated</b>	<b>FY 2016 Estimated</b>	<b>FY 2017 Estimated</b>	<b>FY 2018 Estimated</b>
<b>Individual Income Taxes</b>	<b>(36,041)</b>	<b>(36,320)</b>	<b>(37,949)</b>	<b>(39,083)</b>
Reduce Marginal Tax Rate on Income Between \$40,000 and \$60,000 from 8.5% to 7.0%	(37,518)	(38,481)	(39,856)	(40,977)
Keep Marginal Tax Rate on Incomes Above \$350,000 at the Current Statutory Rate of 8.95%	-	18,773	19,808	20,699
Expand Earned Income Tax Credit for Childless Workers	-	(10,834)	(11,576)	(12,014)
Broaden the Tax Base by Eliminating Certain Credits	-	3,722	3,803	3,867
Raise the Standard Deduction to \$5,200 for Singles, \$8,350 for Married and \$6,500 for Head of Household	-	(15,618)	(16,352)	(17,029)
Phase Out Personal Exemptions Starting at Income of \$150,000	-	4,718	4,924	5,170
Senior Citizen Tax Relief: Expand Schedule H Tax Credit for Seniors	(2,023)	(2,100)	(2,200)	(2,300)
Restaffing of Compliance Adjustment Unit	3,500	3,500	3,500	3,500
<b>Business Income Taxes</b>	<b>(4,943)</b>	<b>(6,061)</b>	<b>(6,242)</b>	<b>(2,478)</b>
Use Single Weighted Sales Apportionment Factor	20,000	21,015	21,977	22,938
Reduce Business Income Tax Rate from 9.975% to 9.4%	(20,000)	(21,015)	(21,977)	(22,938)
Exempt Entities that Trade on Their Own Accounts from Unincorporated Business Franchise Tax	(4,400)	(4,400)	(4,400)	(4,400)
Postpone Implementation of the Tax Clarity Equity Act of 2013 by One Year	-	-	-	4,000
Institute an Income Tax Credit for Conversion of Vehicles to Run on Alternative Fuels	(418)	(494)	(618)	(779)
Institute an Income Tax Credit for Installation of Alternative Fuel Charging Stations	(125)	(167)	(224)	(299)
Authorize and Fund a Low-Income Housing Tax Credit Program	-	(1,000)	(1,000)	(1,000)
<b>Total</b>	<b>(40,984)</b>	<b>(42,381)</b>	<b>(44,191)</b>	<b>(41,561)</b>

*Conditional Tax Reductions.* The BSA also directs additional tax cuts, including further reduction of individual income tax rates, further reduction of the business franchise tax rate, and an increase in standard deductions and personal exemptions (the “Additional Tax Cuts”) based on certain conditions and priorities. Specifically, if the local Fiscal Year 2015 and Fiscal Year 2016 recurring annual revenues included in the quarterly revenue estimate issued in February 2015 by the CFO exceed the annual revenue estimate incorporated in the approved budget and financial plan for Fiscal Year 2015, the District will recognize the first \$181 million of such increase as Fiscal Year 2016 revenue and then use the increased revenues in excess of \$181 million (“Increased Revenues”) to implement the Additional Tax Cuts beginning on January 1, 2016 in accordance with priorities set forth in the BSA, and only to the extent that Increased Revenues equal to or exceed the cost of the Additional Tax Cuts. Further, after the Fiscal Year 2016 budget and financial plan has been approved or deemed approved by Congress, any recurring revenues in a quarterly revenue estimate preceding any subsequent fiscal year (net of the dedicated deposit to the Pay-as-you-go Capital Account pursuant to D.C. Official Code section 47-392.02(f)), that

exceed the local revenue incorporated in the approved budget and financial plan for that fiscal year (the “Excess Revenues”), will be used to continue the implementation of the Additional Tax Cuts beginning on January 1 of each applicable year in accordance with the priorities set forth in the BSA, and only to the extent that the Excess Revenues equal to or exceed the cost of the Additional Tax Cuts. The actual cost of the Additional Tax Cuts will be recalculated on an annual basis and reported in each applicable February revenue estimates issued by the CFO.

If the conditions for implementing all of the Additional Tax Cuts were met in Fiscal Year 2016, which would only occur if the Increased Revenues were at least \$127 million, the estimated revenue reduction resulting from the implementation of all of the Additional Tax Cuts in Fiscal Year 2016 would be \$127 million. Further tax cuts are not provided for under current law even if Increased Revenues exceed \$127 million.

**Table 5. Tax Revenues by Source, Governmental Funds**  
 Last Ten Fiscal Years  
*(modified accrual basis of accounting, \$000s)*

Fiscal Year	Property Tax			Sales and Use	Income and Franchise	Gross Receipts	Other Taxes	Total
	Real	Personal	Rental					
2004	\$ 947,690	\$63,558	\$16,840	\$ 828,391	\$1,299,009	\$271,897	\$379,521	\$3,806,906
2005	1,058,100	72,068	18,165	957,394	1,472,432	295,819	377,213	4,251,191
2006	1,163,598	55,548	22,336	970,885	1,591,483	278,453	390,542	4,472,845
2007	1,452,267	67,394	32,239	1,056,780	1,736,361	302,768	498,198	5,146,007
2008	1,666,315	59,690	33,086	1,101,859	1,755,894	302,873	413,401	5,333,118
2009	1,832,748	69,163	32,612	1,052,011	1,478,068	315,976	261,909	5,042,487
2010	1,790,519	56,501	34,264	1,081,005	1,434,131	295,531	264,959	4,956,910
2011	1,715,069	52,696	32,980	1,121,257	1,656,283	279,002	403,199	5,260,486
2012	1,843,918	55,734	35,134	1,218,576	1,956,590	319,036	404,066	5,833,054
2013	1,940,169	54,878	45,450	1,247,374	2,094,179	345,852	400,308	6,128,210

Source: District’s CAFR for Fiscal Year 2013; Statistical Section, Exhibit S-1E.

[Remainder of page intentionally left blank.]

## **CERTAIN DISTRICT FINANCIAL INFORMATION**

### **Financial Statements**

D.C. Official Code § 47-119 requires that the District's financial operations be audited each Fiscal Year by an independent auditor. The District selected KPMG, LLP as its independent auditor for Fiscal Year 2010 pursuant to a one-year contract that is subject to four annual renewal options at the option of the District. District law provides that an audit contract with the same auditor cannot be extended past five years.

As set forth in Part 1, the FY 2013 Financial Statements, which are included in the District's CAFR for Fiscal Year 2013, have been incorporated herein by reference. The District's CAFR for Fiscal Year 2013 can be found on the District's website at <http://cfo.dc.gov/node/771312> or by registering with and logging onto the website of Digital Assurance Certification, L.L.C. ("DAC") at [www.dacbond.com](http://www.dacbond.com). DAC is the disclosure dissemination agent for the District. Copies of the District's CAFRs may also be obtained by written request submitted to the Treasurer of the District of Columbia, Office of Finance and Treasury, 1101 Fourth Street, S.W., Suite 850, Washington, D.C. 20024, or by email at [dcinvestorrelations@dc.gov](mailto:dcinvestorrelations@dc.gov). The District did not require the independent auditor's consent to incorporate by reference herein the FY 2013 Financial Statements. The independent auditor did not review or perform any procedures relating to this Official Statement. Further, the independent auditor has not been engaged to perform and has not performed, since the date of the CAFR for Fiscal Year 2013, any procedures on the financial statements addressed in its report as a part of the CAFR for Fiscal Year 2013.

### **Revenues and Expenditures**

The District began Fiscal Year 2013 (October 1, 2012) with a General Fund balance of \$1.5 billion. The General Fund's fund balance at the end of Fiscal Year 2013 (September 30, 2013) was \$1.749 billion. Based upon GAAP principles, the District ended Fiscal Year 2013 with an excess of revenues over expenditures of approximately \$329.5 million in the General Fund, which, when combined with other financing sources and uses in the General Fund of -\$87.1 million for Fiscal Year 2013, resulted in a net change of \$242.4 million in the General Fund's balance. See Exhibit 2-b in the FY 2013 Financial Statements.

Table 6 below summarizes, on a budgetary basis, District General Fund revenues and expenditures for Fiscal Year 2013. The difference between the \$329.5 million referred to in the preceding paragraph and the approximately \$320.9 million excess of revenues over expenditures in Table 6 is accounted for by the difference between a presentation using a GAAP basis and that using a budgetary basis. See Section X in Note 1 in the FY 2013 Financial Statements.

**Table 6. General Fund - Schedule of Budgetary Basis Revenues and Expenditures**  
 Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2013  
 (\$000s)

	General Fund			Variance Positive (Negative)
	Budget		Actual	
	Original	Revised		
<b>Revenues and Sources:</b>				
Taxes:				
Property taxes	\$ 2,008,841	\$ 1,952,097	\$ 1,975,102	\$ 23,005
Sales and use taxes	1,148,676	1,206,804	1,193,889	(12,915)
Income and franchise taxes	1,811,675	2,129,369	2,094,179	(35,190)
Other taxes	636,303	666,030	657,522	(8,508)
Total taxes	5,605,495	5,954,300	5,920,692	(33,608)
Licenses and permits	77,940	69,029	78,857	9,828
Fines and forfeits	178,522	165,122	145,509	(19,613)
Charges for services	63,223	68,026	75,416	7,390
Miscellaneous	115,900	106,070	166,268	60,198
Other sources	455,488	433,273	469,143	35,870
Bond proceeds	6,000	6,000	4,079	(1,921)
Federal contributions	-	-	-	-
Operating grant	-	-	-	-
Fund balance released from restrictions	51,468	132,587	18,442	(114,145)
Interfund transfer-from lottery and games	63,175	63,175	68,314	5,139
Interfund transfer-others	35,326	46,026	46,168	142
<b>Total revenues and other sources</b>	<b>6,652,537</b>	<b>7,043,608</b>	<b>6,992,888</b>	<b>(50,720)</b>
<b>Expenditures and Other Uses:</b>				
Governmental direction and support	602,430	587,627	570,726	16,901
Economic development and regulation	291,790	329,801	299,942	29,859
Public safety and justice	995,574	992,170	981,755	10,415
Public education system	1,620,002	1,504,068	1,485,610	18,458
Public education AY <sup>(2)</sup> 14 expenditure	-	178,903	178,903	-
Human support services	1,643,872	1,698,469	1,675,504	22,965
Public works	569,939	576,926	550,524	26,402
Presidential inauguration	-	11,286	8,899	2,387
Workforce investments	-	502	-	502
Wilson building	4,193	4,193	3,690	503
Repay bonds and interest	467,424	463,279	459,628	3,651
Repay revenue bonds and interest	8,222	6,665	6,665	-
Bond fiscal charge	6,000	6,000	4,420	1,580
Interest on short term borrowing	4,390	2,118	1,581	537
Certificates of participation	32,542	32,542	31,825	717
Settlements and judgments fund	21,477	20,977	15,590	5,387
Convention center transfer	106,729	107,041	107,041	-
Highway trust transfer	36,472	35,111	35,111	-
Emergency planning and security costs	-	-	-	-
Operating lease-equipment	50,036	50,036	49,953	83
Emergency and contingency reserve	750	144	-	144
Pay-go capital	35,803	88,202	88,202	-
Schools modernization fund	8,626	8,626	8,626	-
District retiree health contribution	107,800	107,800	107,800	-
Non-departmental agency	34,161	12,079	-	12,079
Total expenditures and other uses	6,648,232	6,824,565	6,671,995	152,570
<b>EXCESS OF REVENUES AND OTHER SOURCES OVER EXPENDITURES AND OTHER USES - BUDGETARY BASIS</b>	<b>\$ 4,305</b>	<b>\$ 219,043</b>	<b>\$ 320,893</b>	<b>\$ 101,850</b>

(1) Numbers may not add due to rounding.

(2) "AY" means academic year.

Source: District's Fiscal Year 2013 CAFR; Financial Section; Budgetary Comparison Statement, Exhibit 2-d.

The Home Rule Act requires the District to have an annual budget that includes, among other things, the budget for the forthcoming Fiscal Year, a multiyear plan for all agencies and all sources of funding, a multiyear capital improvement plan, a performance report comparing actual performance to goals, an issue analysis statement, and a summary of the budget for public distribution. The multiyear plan includes the actual experience of the immediately preceding three Fiscal Years, the approved current Fiscal Year budget, and estimates for at least the four succeeding Fiscal Years.

For each Fiscal Year, the Mayor is required by the Home Rule Act to submit to the Council, at such time as the Council directs, a budget, prepared on the basis that proposed expenditures do not exceed resources. Upon approval by Council, the budget is transmitted by the Mayor to the President, for transmission by the President to Congress. After the submission of the District's proposed budget to Congress, the District's budget is subject to the Congressional appropriations process. Congress is free to alter the budget as it sees fit. If Congress fails to enact the District's appropriations act by the start of the new Fiscal Year on October 1, Congress must enact a continuing resolution in order for the District to expend its revenues and operate the government. The District cannot spend money, including locally generated funds, without Congressional appropriations, except for certain designated purposes, including, among other things, the payment of debt service on income tax secured revenue bonds, general obligation bonds and general obligation tax revenue anticipation notes.

Pursuant to the provisions of (i) the federal Anti-Deficiency Act, 31 U.S.C. §§ 1341, 1342, 1349-1351 and 1511-1519 (the "Federal ADA"), and D.C. Official Code §§ 1-206.03(e) and 47-105; (ii) the District of Columbia Anti-Deficiency Act, D.C. Official Code §§ 47-355.01 –355.08 (the "D.C. ADA" and (i) and (ii) collectively, as amended from time to time, the "Anti-Deficiency Acts"); and (iii) Section 446 of the District of Columbia Home Rule Act, D.C. Official Code § 1-204.46, with the exception of repayment of debt service on bonds and expenditures of certain grants, the District cannot obligate itself to any financial commitment in any present or future year unless the necessary funds to pay that commitment have been appropriated by Congress and are lawfully available for the purpose committed.

*Local Budget Autonomy Legislation.* The Local Budget Autonomy Amendment Act of 2012, adopted by the District Council on December 18, 2012, was subsequently approved by the District voters (the "Budget Autonomy Act"). The Budget Autonomy Act granted the District, effective January 1, 2014, the right to enact and appropriate its local funds budget without the need for approval by the United States Congress and to establish the District's fiscal year. The U.S. Government Accountability Office issued an opinion on January 30, 2014 stating that the Budget Autonomy Act had no legal effect and that it would violate federal laws, including both the Federal ADA and the Budget and Accounting Act of 1921, 31 U.S.C. § 1108. The District's Attorney General also issued an opinion questioning the legal validity of the Budget Autonomy Act. On April 11, 2014, the Mayor and the CFO sent separate letters to the Council Chairman stating that the Budget Autonomy Act has no legal validity and that its implementation could cause District employees to be in violation of federal statutes, particularly the Federal ADA. On April 17, 2014, the Council filed a lawsuit in the District's Superior Court seeking a declaratory judgment that the Budget Autonomy Act is valid as well as an injunction requiring the Mayor and the CFO to comply with the Budget Autonomy Act. The lawsuit was removed to the U.S. District Court for the District of Columbia ("Federal Court"), and oral arguments were presented on May 14, 2014. On May 19, 2014, the Federal Court issued a memorandum opinion that concluded "the Budget Autonomy Act is unlawful", denied the Council's motion for summary judgment and granted the Mayor and CFO's motion for summary judgment. The Council filed its notice of appeal with the U.S. Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia District on May 19, 2014 and the case is scheduled for oral argument before the appellate court on October 17, 2014; however, the decision of the Federal Court permanently enjoined enforcement of the Budget Autonomy Act.

Notwithstanding the Budget Autonomy Act, the Continuing Appropriations Act and the Consolidated Appropriations Act (as defined below) provide the District with spending authority for District local funds for the remainder of Fiscal Year 2014 and the entire Fiscal Year 2015.

*Federal Appropriations for Fiscal Years 2014 and 2015.* Generally, the District cannot obligate or expend District funds without a federal appropriation. Thus, from October 1 through October 16, 2013, because Congress did not approve the Fiscal Year 2014 Budget or provide spending authority for the District for Fiscal Year 2014, the District government did not have appropriated funds available for its operations. However, the Mayor of the District informed the federal Office of Management and Budget (OMB) that “all operations of the government of the District of Columbia are ‘excepted’ activities essential to the protection of public safety, health, and property and therefore [would] continue to be performed during a lapse in appropriations.” The District government remained open and operating during the October 1 to October 16 period, utilizing permanently appropriated money in its Contingency Reserve Fund to pay employees and certain other operating costs. The District has fully replenished the amounts drawn from the Contingency Reserve Fund during the period from October 1 to October 16, 2013. The Continuing Appropriations Act, 2014 (P.L. 113-46) signed by the President on October 17, 2013 (“Continuing Appropriations Act”), and the Consolidated Appropriations Act, 2014 (Public Law No. 113-76) signed by the President on January 17, 2014 (the “Consolidated Appropriations Act”), provide appropriations for Fiscal Year 2014. Further, if there is no Congressional appropriations act or continuing resolution governing the District for a period of time during Fiscal Year 2015, the Consolidated Appropriations Act authorizes the District to spend its own local budget at the level as stated in the Fiscal Year 2015 Budget Request Act of 2014, as modified as of the beginning of the applicable period.

After Congress appropriates the District’s budget, the District’s ability to shift funds between major funding categories approved during the appropriations process remains constrained by federal and local law. A request by the Mayor to reprogram funds is subject to approval by the Council, including reprogrammings between agencies within the same appropriation title.

The Office of the CFO monitors spending primarily through a quarterly financial review process. That process involves the submission of a quarterly financial status update from each agency of the District, an analysis of those reports by staff of the Office of Budget and Planning, and reconciliation of any differences from forecasted spending. In addition, a monthly Financial Status Report is compiled to provide a “snapshot” of the District’s progress in executing the annual budget. As necessary, follow-up meetings between staff of the Office of Budget and Planning and agency personnel are conducted to explore more fully expenditure control issues and forecasting assumptions. Agency directors and financial managers may be required by the CFO to submit specific action plans, including milestone achievement dates, to eliminate potential overspending. Remedial action plans are required wherever current agency control plans are deemed to be inadequate to ensure budget balance.

### **Fiscal Year 2014 and 2015 Budgets**

*Fiscal Year 2014 Approved Budget.* The total Fiscal Year 2014 General Fund budget, as originally approved and as supplemented to date, calls for expenditures totaling \$7.16 billion, of which \$6.35 billion is from local funds, \$296 million is from dedicated taxes and \$516 million is from special purpose non-tax revenue funds. General Fund revenue is estimated to total \$7.03 billion, of which \$6.26 billion is estimated from local funds, \$301 million is estimated from dedicated taxes and \$469 million is estimated from special purpose non-tax revenue funds. Total General Fund resources are estimated to be \$7.19 billion, which consists of \$7.03 billion of revenue, \$149 million of fund balance use, and \$10 million of bond proceeds for issuance costs and transfers from other funds.

*Fiscal Year 2015 Proposed Budget.* The Mayor submitted the Fiscal Year 2015 Proposed Budget, including both the operating and capital budgets (the “Fiscal Year 2015 Proposed Budget”), to the Council on April 3, 2014. After Council markup and approval, the Mayor exercised a line-item veto of several provisions. The Council overrode the veto and will transmit those provisions to the President. The Mayor will transmit the remainder of the Fiscal Year 2015 Proposed Budget to the President.

The total Fiscal Year 2015 General Fund budget calls for expenditures totaling approximately \$7.69 billion, of which \$6.80 billion is from local funds, \$304 million is from dedicated taxes and \$585 million is from special purpose non-tax revenue funds. General Fund revenue totals \$7.51 billion, of which \$6.66 billion is from local funds, \$298 million is from dedicated taxes and \$552 million is from special purpose non-tax revenue funds. These revenues include a net increase of \$2 million of policy proposals impacting General Fund revenues, of which \$30 million is a reduction from local funds; \$29 million is an increase from dedicated taxes and \$3 million increase is from special purpose non-tax revenue funds. Total General Fund resources are \$7.70 billion, which consists of \$7.51 billion of revenue, \$149 million of fund balance use, \$31 million of transfers from other funds and \$6 million of bond proceeds for issuance costs.

### **Capital Budgeting and Financing**

*The following describes the District’s proposed six-year capital improvements plan (for Fiscal Years 2015-2020) as set forth in the District’s proposed Fiscal Year 2015 Budget.*

The District’s proposed six-year capital improvements plan for Fiscal Years 2015-2020 anticipates funding from various sources, including long-term income tax secured revenue bonds and/or general obligation bonds, long-term grant anticipation revenue vehicles (“GARVEE”) bonds, pay-as-you-go transfers from the General Fund, equipment lease/purchase financing, federal grants, private grants, a local match to the grants from the Federal Highway Administration, sales of assets and local transportation fund revenue, totaling \$6.5 billion of capital funds over the course of the six-year period.

The proposed six-year capital improvements plan assumes approximately \$1.08 billion of income tax secured revenue bonds and/or general obligation bonds being issued to fund the District’s capital improvements plan during Fiscal Year 2015 and approximately \$4.03 billion of income tax secured revenue bonds and/or general obligation bonds being issued to fund the District’s capital improvements plan over the course of the six-year period from 2015 through 2020, as set forth in the table on the next page.

The actual amount of capital projects financed with income tax secured revenue bonds or general obligation bonds each year will be re-evaluated in each annual budget development process and prior to each issuance and will depend on capital project priorities and the progress of such projects over their development life cycles, constrained by the District’s intent to moderate its borrowing levels in order to prudently manage its debt ratios and debt burden. The District is implementing new systems and controls to better monitor planned and actual spending on approved capital projects. Based on this information, the District will determine the extent to which planned borrowing will be supplemented with other sources, such as General Fund revenue in the form of pay-as-you-go capital, to the extent that such other sources are available.

The table on the next page summarizes the District’s proposed capital improvements plan for Fiscal Years 2015 through 2020, as set forth in the Fiscal Year 2015 Proposed Budget. References to the issuance of bonds to fund the capital improvements plan may refer to either income tax secured revenue bonds or to general obligation bonds, either of which may be issued by the District for such purpose.

**Table 7. Fiscal Years 2015-2020 Capital Improvements Plan Funding Sources**  
(Budgetary Basis)  
(\$000s)

	<u>FY 2015</u>	<u>FY 2016</u>	<u>FY 2017</u>	<u>FY 2018</u>	<u>FY 2019</u>	<u>FY 2020</u>	<u>FY 2015- FY 2020 Total</u>
General Obligation/Income Tax Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>	\$1,077,764	\$839,193	\$569,172	\$170,966	\$758,034	\$615,646	\$4,030,775
Master Equipment Lease/Purchase	26,020	14,900	-	-	25,000	25,000	90,920
Pay-As-You-Go	6,450	44,674	111,591	159,544	164,122	169,376	655,757
Sale of Assets	6,500	27,225	2,475	-	-	-	36,200
Private Grants	1,100	6,250	11,250	-	-	-	18,600
Local Transportation Fund Revenue <sup>(2)</sup>	22,487	28,066	29,847	34,630	33,272	33,059	181,361
GARVEE Bonds	-	67,770	117,290	106,230	-	-	291,290
Local Highway Trust Fund <sup>(3)</sup>	37,685	37,162	35,163	30,163	31,306	31,306	202,785
Federal Grants	186,936	162,448	162,448	162,448	162,448	162,448	999,176
<b>Total Funding<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b><u>\$1,364,941</u></b>	<b><u>\$1,227,688</u></b>	<b><u>\$1,039,236</u></b>	<b><u>\$663,980</u></b>	<b><u>\$1,174,182</u></b>	<b><u>\$1,036,835</u></b>	<b><u>\$6,506,862</u></b>

- (1) Does not reflect additional borrowing required to repay the General Fund for capital expenditures prior to a project receiving financing. Planned borrowing for such repayments in Fiscal Years 2015 – 2020 exceeds new capital budget allotments by \$15 million in Fiscal Years 2015 and 2016, \$10 million in Fiscal Year 2017, \$12 million in Fiscal Year 2019 and \$20 million in Fiscal Year 2020.
- (2) Includes local revenues from utility marking service fees, public inconvenience fees and a portion of rights-of-way occupancy fees.
- (3) Includes local revenues from motor fuel taxes and a portion of rights-of-way fees.

The table above does not include the issuance of TIF Bonds, PILOT Notes or refunding bonds, all of which the District may issue from time to time. See “INDEBTEDNESS- Long-Term Obligations - Economic Development Initiatives of the District” herein.

The Fiscal Year 2011 Budget Support Act of 2010 (D.C. Law 18-223, effective September 24, 2010) (the “Fiscal Year 2011 Budget Support Act”) created a Pay-as-you-go Capital Account beginning in Fiscal Year 2012, which was to be used to reduce future District borrowing for capital purposes. The annual amount of local funds deposited into the Pay-as-you-go Capital Account is to equal the projected local funds revenue of each year, minus the Fiscal Year 2011 local funds revenue in the Budget and Financial Plan approved May 26, 2010, multiplied by 25%. Subsequent legislation, including the District’s Fiscal Year 2013 Budget, updated the base year for the Pay-as-you-go Capital Account requirement to be the Fiscal Year 2015 local funds revenue, and it made Fiscal Year 2016 the first year the requirement would take effect. The Fiscal Year 2014 Budget Support Act of 2013 (D.C. Law 20-61), effective December 24, 2013, uses Fiscal Year 2016 as the base year and makes Fiscal Year 2017 the first year all funds in the Pay-as-you-go Capital Account will be dedicated to the construction of the District’s new streetcar system, until the system is complete. The act was again modified by the Fiscal Year 2015 Budget Support Emergency Act of 2014 (D.C. Act 20-377), enacted July 14, 2014. The new language creates the Pay-as-you-go Capital Account beginning with the Fiscal Year 2017 budget based on the revenue estimate submitted in “May of the previous year”. Thus, the mechanism now adds to the account

based on year-over-year differences in the revenue estimates, and it does not direct the account to be dedicated to the construction of the streetcar system.

### **Cash Reserves**

The District is required by federal law to maintain the Emergency Reserve Fund and the Contingency Reserve Fund, and is required by District law to maintain the Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account and the Cash Flow Reserve Account. The Fiscal Year 2011 Budget Support Act directed the CFO to create the Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account and the Cash Flow Reserve Account as segregated nonlapsing accounts within the cumulative Fund Balance. These two accounts were established with the goal of replenishing and augmenting the spendable portion of the District's Fund Balance to a level that, together with the Emergency Reserve Fund and the Contingency Reserve Fund, equals approximately two months (16.67%) of operating expenditures. The District has not fully funded the Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account or the Cash Flow Reserve Account as of the date of this Official Statement. The Emergency Reserve Fund, the Contingency Reserve Fund, Cash Flow Reserve Account and Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account, are collectively referred to herein as the "Cash Reserves."

***Emergency Reserve Fund.*** The District is required by federal law to maintain an Emergency Reserve Fund, which is a separate account within the General Fund. The District is required to deposit not later than October 1 of each Fiscal Year into the Emergency Reserve Fund that amount in cash necessary to bring the balance in such fund to 2% of the actual operating expenditures (less the amount necessary to repay draws during the next two Fiscal Years) paid from local funds for the Fiscal Year of the most recently issued CAFR, after deducting from such expenditures those amounts attributed to debt service payments for which a debt service reserve or escrow fund is already established.

The CFO, in consultation with the Mayor, developed a policy to govern the use of such funds, which is limited by law to unanticipated and nonrecurring extraordinary needs of an emergency nature. Accordingly, the Emergency Reserve Fund may not be used to fund (i) any department, agency, or office of the District that is administered by a receiver, (ii) shortfalls in any projected expenditure reductions that are included in the budget proposed by the District, or (iii) settlements and judgments made by or against the District. Funds may be allocated from the Emergency Reserve Fund only after the CFO has prepared an analysis regarding the non-availability of other sources of funding to carry out the purposes of the allocation and the impact of such allocation on the balance and integrity of the Emergency Reserve Fund.

The District must replenish any expenditures from the Emergency Reserve Fund so that not less than 50% of such expenditures or the amount needed to restore the 2% balance, whichever is less, is replenished by the end of the first Fiscal Year following the year in which the expenditure was made, with the balance being restored by the end of the second Fiscal Year. If funds in the Emergency Reserve Fund are expended, the Mayor and the Council must notify the Committees on Appropriation of the Senate and the House in writing not more than 30 days after such expenditure.

***Contingency Reserve Fund.*** The District is required by federal law to maintain a Contingency Reserve Fund, which is a separate account within the General Fund. The District is required to deposit not later than October 1 of each Fiscal Year into the Contingency Reserve Fund that amount in cash necessary to bring the balance in such fund to 4% of the actual operating expenditures (less the amount necessary to repay draws during the next two Fiscal Years) paid from local funds for the Fiscal Year of the most recently issued CAFR, after deducting from such expenditures those amounts attributed to debt service payments for which a debt service reserve or escrow fund is already established.

The CFO, in consultation with the Mayor, developed a policy to govern the use of such funds, which is limited to nonrecurring or unforeseen needs that arise during the Fiscal Year, including natural disasters, unforeseen weather conditions, unexpected obligations created by federal law, new public safety or health needs or opportunities to achieve cost savings. The Contingency Reserve Fund also may be used to cover revenue shortfalls that continue for three consecutive months (based on a two month rolling average) that are 5% or more below the budget forecast. The policy is described in APPENDIX A to the District's annual budget and financial plan.

The District must replenish any expenditures from the Contingency Reserve Fund so that not less than 50% of such expenditures or the amount needed to restore the 4% balance, whichever is less, is replenished by the end of the first Fiscal Year following the year in which the expenditure was made, with the balance being restored by the end of the second Fiscal Year.

In addition, the District has the authority to allocate and use amounts in the Emergency Reserve Fund and Contingency Reserve Fund for cash flow management purposes. Such allocations may not exceed 50% of the balance of the applicable reserve fund at the time such allocation is made. The aggregate amount allocated from a reserve fund during a Fiscal Year may not exceed 50% of the balance of such fund as of the first day of such Fiscal Year. Following any allocation, the District is required to fully replenish the amounts allocated from a reserve fund not later than the earlier of (i) nine months after the allocation or (ii) the last day of the Fiscal Year. In addition, following any allocation from a reserve fund for cash flow management purposes, if the District makes any other allocation from such fund during a Fiscal Year the result of which is that the balance of the reserve fund is reduced to an amount that is less than 50% of the balance of the reserve fund on the first day of such Fiscal Year, the District must replenish the balance of such fund within 60 days to an amount equal to 50% of the balance of the reserve fund on the first day of such Fiscal Year. Nothing precludes the District from using such funds for cash flow management purposes more than once during a Fiscal Year, subject to the provisions regarding replenishment.

**Cash Flow Reserve Account.** The Cash Flow Reserve Account was established by the District in Fiscal Year 2011 and may be used by the CFO to cover cash-flow needs, provided that any amounts used must be replenished to the Cash Flow Reserve Account in the same Fiscal Year. At full funding, the Cash Flow Reserve Account will equal 8.33% of the General Fund operating budget for each Fiscal Year. At September 30, 2013, the cash balance in the Cash Flow Reserve Account was \$295,442,841, which was approximately 4.33% of the General Fund operating budget as of that date.

**Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account.** The Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account was established by the District in Fiscal Year 2011 and may be used by the Mayor for those purposes for which the Contingency Reserve Fund may be used as discussed above (except for cash flow management purposes), as certified by the CFO, with approval of the Council by act. At full funding, the Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account will equal 2.34% of the District's General Fund operating expenditures for each Fiscal Year. At September 30, 2013, the cash balance in the Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account was \$156,124,683, which was approximately 2.34% of the General Fund operating expenditures as of that date, representing full funding of the account. To date, the District has never withdrawn funds from the Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account.

If either of the Cash Flow Reserve Account or the Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account is below full funding, immediately upon issue of the District's CAFR, the CFO is required to deposit 50% of the undesignated end-of-year Fund Balance into each account, or 100% of the undesignated end-of-year Fund Balance into the account that has not reached capacity, to fully fund these accounts to the extent that the undesignated end-of-year Fund Balance allows. If amounts required to satisfy the reserve requirements

for the Emergency Reserve Fund or the Contingency Reserve Fund are reduced, the amount required to be deposited in Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account is required to be increased by a like amount.

**Historical Use of Cash Reserves.** All of the draws on the reserve funds described below were for authorized purposes, and the respective replenishments were in compliance with the statutory deadlines.

**Table 8. Historical Use of Cash Reserves**  
**Fiscal Years 2010-2014**  
(\$ in millions)

Fiscal Year	Withdrawals				Replenishments			
	Emergency Reserve Fund	Contingency Reserve Fund	Cash Flow Reserve Account	Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account	Emergency Reserve Fund	Contingency Reserve Fund	Cash Flow Reserve Account	Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account
2010	\$100.0	\$236.0	N/A	N/A	\$100.0	\$286.8	N/A	N/A
2011	-0-	\$236.8	-0-	-0-	-0-	\$242.8	-0-	-0-
2012	-0-	\$ 52.1	-0-	-0-	-0-	\$ 52.1	-0-	-0-
2013	-0-	\$284.6	\$39.0	-0-	-0-	\$284.6	\$39.0	-0-
2014*	-0-	\$414.4	\$82.7	-0-	-0-	\$186.2	-0-	-0-

\* Withdrawals and Replenishments shown are as of July 14, 2014. As of August 11, 2014, \$454.4 million of the Fiscal Year 2014 withdrawals from the Contingency Reserve Fund and the Cash Flow Reserve Account have been replenished or have been directed to be replenished. The District anticipates replenishing the remaining \$42.7 million in the Contingency Reserve Fund by the close of Fiscal Year 2014, but if it does not do so, it must replenish that amount in the next two fiscal years.

**Table 9. Cash Reserve Fund Balances<sup>(1)</sup>**  
(\$ in millions)

<u>Fiscal Year</u>	<u>2010</u>	<u>2011</u>	<u>2012</u>	<u>2013</u>	<u>2014</u>
Emergency Reserve Fund <sup>(1)</sup>	\$110	\$110	\$110	\$112	\$116
Contingency Reserve Fund <sup>(1)</sup>	228	229	229	227	232
Cash Flow Reserve Account <sup>(2)</sup>	N/A	152	346	295	296
Fiscal Stabilization Reserve Account <sup>(2)</sup>	N/A	42	95	156	157

(1) The amounts listed for Fiscal Years 2010-2013 reflect the actual reserve balances reported in the District's CAFR for such Fiscal Years, while the amounts for Fiscal Year 2014 balances are the Fiscal Year 2014 Revised Budget amounts set forth in the Fiscal Year 2015 Budget. The cash components referenced in the paragraphs below represent actual cash balances at September 30 and may vary from amounts reported in the applicable CAFR.

(2) The amounts listed for Fiscal Years 2011-2013 are taken from the District's CAFRs, Note 11 for such Fiscal Years. Fiscal Year 2014 balances are the Fiscal Year 2014 Revised Budget amounts set forth in the Fiscal Year 2015 Budget.

As of September 30, 2010, the cash components of the Emergency Reserve Fund and the Contingency Reserve Fund balances were \$109.7 million and \$202.2 million, respectively. The September 30, 2010, cash balance of the Contingency Reserve Fund differs from the Fiscal Year 2010 ending balance for such Fund reflected in Table 9 above because (i) the District deposited the \$20.0 million of the Fiscal Year 2010 Not-for-Profit Hospital Corporation draw described above after September 30, 2010, during the Fiscal Year 2010 year-end closing process, and (ii) the Fiscal Year 2010 ending balance reflected in Table 9 includes a \$6.0 million receivable for the Not-for-Profit Hospital Corporation draw.

As of September 30, 2011, the cash components of the Emergency Reserve Fund and the Contingency Reserve Fund balances were \$109.9 million and \$212.7 million, respectively. The September 30, 2011, cash balance of the Contingency Reserve Fund differs from the Fiscal Year 2011 ending balance for such Fund reflected in Table 9 above because of two amounts outstanding as of that date: (i) a \$10.0 million draw related to the August 2011 earthquake and (ii) a \$6.0 million portion of the draw related to the Not-for-Profit Hospital Corporation. These draws were replenished consistent with statutory requirements.

As of September 30, 2012, the cash components of the Emergency Reserve Fund and the Contingency Reserve Fund balances were \$110.0 million and \$210.0 million, respectively. The September 30, 2012, cash balance of the Contingency Reserve Fund differs from the Fiscal Year 2012 ending balance for such Fund reflected in Table 9 above because the following draws were outstanding, on a cash basis, as of that date: (i) \$6.0 million cash draw related to continuing earthquake repair; (ii) \$7.7 million to finance operations of the Not-for-Profit Hospital Corporation; (iii) \$1.0 million for a Department of Motor Vehicles ticket collection contract; and (iv) \$4.4 million for the June 2012 “Derecho” storm disaster. These draws were replenished consistent with statutory requirements.

As of September 30, 2013, the Emergency Reserve Fund and the Contingency Reserve Fund balances were \$112.1 million and \$227.4 million, respectively, totaling \$339.5 million. All draws made during the fiscal year were replenished either before the Fiscal Year 2013 close or during that close.

During the period October 1 through October 16, 2013, the federal budget impasse resulted in no appropriations for the District’s budget for Fiscal Year 2014. Accordingly, the District utilized money in the Contingency Reserve Fund (which carries a permanent appropriation and carried a balance of \$150 million into Fiscal Year 2014). This fund was used, in conjunction with the Mayor’s declaration that all District employees are essential, to allow all District employees to continue working and to pay them currently, and to fund certain other actions that required immediate funding, with \$125 million allocated for payroll and \$23 million allocated for other costs. The District has fully replenished the amounts drawn from the Contingency Reserve Fund during the period from October 1 to October 16, 2013.

The Fiscal Year 2015 Proposed Budget and Financial Plan projects the Fiscal Year 2014 Emergency Reserve Fund and the Contingency Reserve Fund balances to be \$116.0 million and \$231.9 million, respectively. The projection assumes that all draws made during the Fiscal Year will be replenished either during the Fiscal Year or during the Fiscal Year 2014 close; the slight increase of the balances over Fiscal Year 2013 is projected to be from the calculation of the required balances based on the applicable local fund expenditures in the CAFR for Fiscal Year 2013.

[Remainder of page intentionally left blank.]

## RETIREMENT PROGRAMS

The District provides full-time employees certain pension benefits through the federal Civil Service Retirement System (“CSRS”), the U.S. Social Security System, or the District's retirement programs. The District also has established a post-retirement health and life insurance plan for eligible employees.

Brief descriptions of these plans are set forth below. See also Notes 9 and 10 to the FY 2013 Financial Statements, which are incorporated herein by reference, and the Required Supplementary Information pertaining to the District's retirement programs and other post-employment benefit (“OPEB”) programs set forth at pages 130 and 131 of the FY 2013 Financial Statements.

### **Pension and Retirement Plans Not Sponsored by the District**

***U.S. Civil Service Retirement & Social Security Systems.*** Permanent full-time employees hired before October 1, 1987, except those covered by the District's retirement program, are covered by the CSRS. As of September 30, 2013, approximately 2,224 active District employees were covered by the CSRS. Permanent full-time employees, except those covered by the District's retirement program, hired after September 30, 1987, are covered by the U.S. Social Security System. As of September 30, 2013, approximately 20,411 active employees were making contributions to the U.S. Social Security System. The CSRS and the U.S. Social Security System are the responsibility of the federal government, and the District is only responsible for making regular payments at specified rates to those plans. Public Law 99-335, effective January 1, 1987, precludes the District's participation in the CSRS and the Federal Health and Life Insurance Program for employees hired after September 30, 1987. Employees hired after that date are covered under the District's health insurance, life insurance and defined contribution pension plans.

The District made contributions to the CSRS in the approximate amounts of \$11.4 million in Fiscal Year 2013 and \$11.4 million in Fiscal Year 2014 and expects to contribute \$10.3 million in Fiscal Year 2015. The District contributed approximately \$68.7 million in Fiscal Year 2013 and \$75.0 million in Fiscal Year 2014 to the U.S. Social Security System and expects to contribute approximately \$78.8 million in Fiscal Year 2015. The District also paid Medicare taxes for those employees in the approximate amounts of \$27.7 million in Fiscal Year 2013 and \$30.0 million in Fiscal Year 2014 and expects to contribute approximately \$30.9 million in Fiscal Year 2015.

***College Teachers' Retirement System.*** The College Teachers' Retirement System, which covers University employees, is a multi-employer plan administered by the nationwide Teachers' Insurance and Annuity Association/College Retirement Equities Fund.

### **Pension and Retirement Plans Sponsored by the District**

***Defined Benefit Pension Plans.*** The District of Columbia Retirement Board (“DCRB”), pursuant to the authority set forth in §§ 191 and 121(e) of the District of Columbia Retirement Reform Act (the “Reform Act”), Pub. L. 96-122, 93 Stat. 866, November 17, 1979 (codified at D.C. Official Code §§ 1-751 and 1-711(e) (2001)) is responsible for managing and controlling the Police Officers and Fire Fighters' Retirement Fund and the Teachers' Retirement Fund (collectively, the “Fund”), as well as implementing and administering the Police Officers and Firefighters' Retirement Plan (codified in D.C. Official Code Title 5, ch. 7) and the Teachers' Retirement Plan (codified in D.C. Official Code Title 38, subtitle V, ch. 20, subch. II) (collectively, the “Plans”) for members of the Plans, their survivors and beneficiaries. The District is responsible for funding and administering these plans. These employees are not covered by the U.S. Social Security System.

The Fund was split in 1997 pursuant to Title XI of the Balanced Budget Act of 1997, Pub. L. 105-33, 111 Stat. 715, as amended (the National Capital Revitalization and Self-Government Improvement Act of 1997, or “Revitalization Act”). Under the Revitalization Act, the U.S. Department of the Treasury (“Treasury”) is responsible for funding benefits based upon service as of June 30, 1997, in accordance with the Plans in effect on June 29, 1997 (“Federal Benefit Payments”) (D.C. Official Code § 1-809.02 (2001)). Treasury maintains a separate fund to pay Federal Benefit Payments. The District is responsible for funding benefits based on service after June 30, 1997, in accordance with a “Replacement Plan” the District was required to adopt (“District Benefits Payments”). These payments are made from the Fund.

The Replacement Plan, enacted by the District in 1998 (the Police Officers, Firefighters, and Teachers Retirement Benefit Replacement Act of 1998, D.C. Law 12-152), continued the terms of the Plans as those plans existed on June 30, 1997 (D.C. Official Code § 1-905.01 (2001)). Amendments to the Replacement Plan by the District government only apply to District Benefit Payments.

Although most benefit payments are only Federal Benefit Payments, an increasing number of payments are either a combination of Federal Benefit Payments and District Benefits Payments (referred to as “Split Benefit Payments”) or District Benefit Payments only. Generally, if a member’s service began and ended on or before June 30, 1997, the member receives Federal Benefit Payments. If a member’s service began on or before June 30, 1997, and ended after June 30, 1997, the member receives Split Benefit Payments (Federal benefit payment regulations apply in determining the split financial obligations between Treasury and the District for Split Benefit Payments. See 31 CFR part 29). If a member’s service began and ended after June 30, 1997, the member receives District Benefit Payments.

**Overview.** The DCRB administers the District’s Retirement Programs (D.C. Official Code Title 5, ch. 7 and D.C. Official Code Title 38, subtitle V, ch. 20, subch. II) which consist of two single-employer defined benefit pension plans, one established for police officers and firefighters, and the other for teachers.

Membership in the Retirement Programs as of October 1, 2013, the date of the most recent valuation, is as follows:

**Table 10. Retirement Programs Membership**  
(as of October 1, 2013)

	<u>Police and Firefighters</u>	<u>Teachers</u>
Active	5,510	4,379
Inactive*	98	1,350
Terminated, vested*	226	912
Retired Members and Survivors*	<u>2,183</u>	<u>3,448</u>
<b>Total*</b>	<b>8,017</b>	<b>10,089</b>

\* District only, does not include federal members.

Each Plan provides retirement, death and disability benefits, and annual cost of living adjustments to Plan members and beneficiaries. Retirement and disability benefit provisions for police and firefighters are established by the Policemen and Firemen’s Retirement and Disability Act (D.C. Code §5-701 et seq. (2001 ed.)). For the Teachers Plan, Title 38, Chapter 20 of the D.C. Code (D.C. Code § 38-2001, et seq. (2001 ed.)) assigns the authority to establish and amend benefit provisions to the Council. The DCRB issues a publicly available financial report which includes financial statements and required supplementary information for the plans. The most recent report for the Fiscal Years ended September 30, 2013 and 2012 (the “2013 DCRB CAFR”) is incorporated herein by reference and can be obtained from the Executive Director, District of Columbia Retirement Board, 900 7th Street, N.W., 2nd Floor,

Washington, D.C. 20001. The 2013 DCRB CAFR can also be found at <http://dcrb.dc.gov/publication/dcrb-2013-fiscal-year-comprehensive-annual-financial-report-cafr>.

The twelve-member DCRB administers the assets of the District's Defined Benefit Replacement Plans, and the District accounts for them as Pension Trust Funds. The District's Defined Benefit Replacement Plans have defined retirement benefits, which increase after retirement in proportion to changes in the Consumer Price Index or, in some cases, current salary levels. Benefits are payable upon retirement, disability, death, or other termination. Required employee contributions are 7% for police officers, firefighters, and teachers hired before the first pay period beginning after November 1, 1996, and 8% for those employees hired after the first pay period beginning after November 1, 1996.

The District is required to contribute the remaining amounts necessary to finance the coverage of its employees through periodic contributions at actuarially determined amounts in accordance with the provisions of the Replacement Plan. The Replacement Plan defines the eligibility and the calculation of the amount of the benefit payment for covered District employees for service accrued after June 30, 1997. The District's contributions for Fiscal Years 2013, 2012, 2011 and 2010 were equal to the plans' independent actuary's recommendation.

The DCRB is currently working with the federal government on a reconciliation of historic retirement payments. Based on information developed to date, the DCRB has determined that it owes the federal government approximately \$30.9 million. This amount is reflected in the audited financial statements of the DCRB for the year ended September 30, 2013 and will be recovered through the annual actuarial valuation process commencing in Fiscal Year 2015.

Tables 11 and 12 on the following page and Table 13 on page 2-29 set forth the total market value of net assets, amount of employee and employer contributions, net investment income, and disbursements including benefit payments, refunds on death and refunds plus interest on withdrawals, for the Retirement Programs for the Police Officers and Firefighters and Teachers for Fiscal Year 2004 through Fiscal Year 2013, inclusive.

[Remainder of page intentionally left blank.]

**Table 11. Police Officers and Firefighters' Retirement Plan<sup>(1)</sup>**

<u>Year Ended September 30</u>	<u>Market Value of Net Assets</u>	<u>Employee Contributions</u>	<u>Employer Contributions</u>	<u>Net Investment Income/(Loss)</u>	<u>Disbursements</u>
2013	\$4,168,457,000	\$30,581,000	\$96,314,000	\$423,581,000	\$65,920,000
2012	3,681,854,000	30,398,000	116,700,000	452,881,000	47,176,000
2011	3,127,467,000	30,474,000	127,200,000	81,973,000	39,357,000
2010	2,925,742,000	31,607,000	132,300,000	270,277,000	34,991,000
2009	2,524,994,000	29,900,000	106,000,000	(58,228,000)	31,084,000
2008	2,476,726,000	31,718,000	137,000,000	(516,438,000)	31,114,000
2007	2,853,608,000	27,489,000	140,100,000	400,433,000	26,008,000
2006	2,310,211,000	25,142,000	117,500,000	212,089,000	17,612,000
2005	1,973,092,000	23,804,000	112,100,000	235,515,000	17,353,000
2004	1,619,026,000	20,847,000	96,700,000	-	9,440,000

**Table 12. Teachers' Retirement Plan<sup>(1)</sup>**

<u>Year Ended September 30</u>	<u>Market Value of Net Assets</u>	<u>Employee Contributions</u>	<u>Employer Contributions</u>	<u>Net Investment Income/(Loss)</u>	<u>Disbursements</u>
2013	\$1,622,375,000	\$28,129,000	\$6,407,000	\$168,117,000	\$84,560,000
2012	1,503,486,000	28,639,000	-	190,002,000	56,539,000
2011	1,340,712,000	27,739,000	-	44,364,000	49,477,000
2010	1,317,470,000	29,940,000	-	125,756,000	43,312,000
2009	1,204,391,000	29,900,000	-	(37,875,000)	41,188,000
2008	1,257,754,000	25,919,000	6,000,000	(259,309,000)	33,611,000
2007	1,517,765,000	26,793,000	14,600,000	217,731,000	28,702,000
2006	1,279,139,000	25,807,000	15,500,000	120,114,000	24,803,000
2005	1,142,521,000	24,778,000	9,200,000	137,333,000	23,079,000
2004	994,289,000	26,283,000	-	102,890,000	9,542,000

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: Annual Actuarial Valuation Reports and Comprehensive Annual Financial Reports.

**Actuarial Valuation.** The most recent actuarial valuation of the Retirement Programs was prepared by the DCRB's actuary, Cavanaugh Macdonald Consulting, LLC, as of October 1, 2013. This valuation (the "2013 Valuation") is incorporated herein by reference and is available at: <http://dcrb.dc.gov/service/actuarial-valuations/>. Prior valuations are also available for comparison purposes and can be obtained from the DCRB at that address.

The purpose of the actuarial valuations prepared for the DCRB is to provide a summary of the funded status of each plan as of the valuation date, to recommend rates of contribution to be paid by the District in the following Fiscal Year (i.e., the 2013 Valuation recommends contribution rates for Fiscal Year 2015) and to provide accounting information under GASB Statements No. 25 and 27.

An actuarial valuation calculates the actuarial accrued liability in each of the plans, which represents the present value of benefits the plan will pay to its retired members and active members upon retirement based on certain demographic and economic assumptions. The actuarial valuation compares the actuarial accrued liability with the actuarial value of assets and any excess of that liability over the assets forms the unfunded actuarial accrued liability ("UAAL"), if any, of the plans. The actuarial valuation will express the percentage that a system is funded through a "funded ratio," which represents the actuarial value of assets of the plan divided by the actuarial accrued liability of such plan. The actuarial valuation will also state an annual required contribution ("ARC"), which is a recommended amount that the District contribute annually to the applicable plan. The ARC consists of two components: (1) normal cost, which represents the portion of the present value of retirement benefits that are allocable to active members' current year service, and (2) an amortized portion of the UAAL, if any.

*Description of Certain Actuarial Assumptions.* To calculate the actuarial value of assets and actuarial accrued liability of each plan, the actuarial valuations use several actuarial assumptions. Some examples of these assumptions include an expected rate of return on assets, age of retirement of active members, future salary increases for current employees and assumed mortality rates for retirees and beneficiaries. If the actual experience of a plan differs from these assumptions, the UAAL of such plan may increase or decrease to the extent of any such variance. With respect to expected rate of return of assets, for example, the actual rate of return for each plan depends on the performance of its investment portfolio. The value of the securities in the investment portfolio changes from one Fiscal Year to the next, which, in turn, causes increases or decreases in the plan's UAAL. This could have a resulting impact on the ARC, which may increase the amount of the District's contribution to the plans.

Prior to the actuarial valuation of the Retirement Programs prepared as of October 1, 2012 (the "2012 Valuation"), the expected rate of return was 7.00%. However, beginning with the 2012 Valuation, the expected rate of return was lowered to 6.50%. Other changes in assumptions used in the 2012 Valuation and continued in the 2013 Valuation included changing the actuarial cost method from the "Aggregate" method to the more commonly used "Entry Age Normal" method, changing the price inflation assumption from 4.25% to 3.50% and lowering the payroll growth assumption from 4.75% to 4.25%. Unlike the Aggregate method, the Entry Age Normal method identifies a normal cost and an unfunded accrued liability, thus allowing gains and losses to be amortized over a period of time (20 years in DCRB's case). Most public pension plans use the Entry Age Normal method.

An additional actuarial method used in arriving at the actuarial valuation is so-called "smoothing," whereby the difference between the market value of assets and the actuarial value of assets is smoothed over a number of years (in the case of the District, the previous seven years) to offset the effects of volatility of market values in any single year. In addition, the DCRB uses a 20% "corridor" in order to prevent the smoothed values from differing too much from market. The use of the 20% corridor means that very large gains and losses (i.e., ones that would produce a smoothed value that is more than 20% higher or lower than the actual market value) will be reflected immediately in funding.

Finally, as noted in the 2013 Valuation, the DCRB adopted a new funding policy as of November 15, 2012. The two main goals of the changed policy are as follows:

to maintain an increasing or stable ratio of plan assets to accrued liabilities and reach a 100% minimum funded ratio; and

to develop stable or declining contribution rates as a percentage of member payroll, with a minimum employer (District) contribution equal to the lesser of the normal cost determined under the Entry Age Normal funding method and the current active member contribution rate.

The new policy also sets the amortization period for any unfunded liability at 20 years in 2012 and will decline one year each year until a funded ratio of 100% is reached. In addition, the amortization of the unfunded accrued liability will be developed using the 'level dollar' approach. Level dollar means the UAL will be paid in the same dollar amount for the entire period, similar to a fixed-rate home mortgage.

Table 13 presents, for each plan, the actuarial value of assets, the market value of net assets, the actuarial value of assets as a percent of market value of assets, the investment rate of return based on the actuarial value of assets, and the investment rate of return based on market value assets over the past ten years.

**Table 13. Actuarial Value, Market Value and Investment Rates of Return**  
(Fiscal Years 2004-2013)

	Fiscal Year	Actuarial Value (AV) of Assets	Market Value (MV) of Net Assets	AV as % of MV	Investment Rate of Return (AV)	Investment Rate of Return (MV) <sup>(1)(2)</sup>
<b>Police Officers and Firefighters</b>	2013	\$4,013,534	\$4,168,457	96%	3.9%	11.5%
	2012	3,804,853	3,681,526	103	2.87	14.5
	2011	3,593,716	3,127,496	115	1.43	2.9
	2010	3,418,796	2,920,790	117	1.27	10.3
	2009	3,032,094	2,524,995	120	0.4	(2.2)
	2008	2,932,100	2,481,200	118	4.6	(16.9)
	2007	2,672,900	2,861,000	93	11.5	16.8
	2006	2,252,600	2,308,200	98	9.2	10.4
	2005	1,933,600	1,978,500	98	9.1	13.9
	2004	1,645,400	1,621,200	101	6.9	11.9
<b>Teachers</b>	2013	\$1,585,775	\$1,622,376	98%	3.9%	11.5%
	2012	1,585,626	1,503,346	105%	2.37	14.5
	2011	1,573,654	1,340,725	117	1.38	2.9
	2010	1,570,968	1,314,357	120	1.32	10.3
	2009	1,445,000	1,204,393	120	0.4	(2.2)
	2008	1,447,600	1,253,500	115	4.6	(16.9)
	2007	1,396,000	1,517,200	92	12.2	16.8
	2006	1,230,000	1,284,400	96	9.6	10.4
	2005	1,104,600	1,145,600	96	9.3	13.9
	2004	998,700	994,700	100	7.0	11.9

(1) Investment returns based on market value of net assets are gross of fees.

(2) Market rates of return for each plan not separately stated.

## Funded Status and Funding Progress

Table 14 provides an analysis of funding progress for each of the District's defined benefit pension plans from 2004 through 2013, based on the annual actuarial valuation report for each respective year.

**Table 14. Schedule of Funding Progress**  
(\$000s)

	Actuarial Valuation Date	Actuarial Value of <u>Assets</u>	Actuarial Accrued Liability ( <u>AAL</u> )*	Unfunded AAL ( <u>UAAL</u> )*	Funded <u>Ratio</u> *	Covered <u>Payroll</u> *	UAAL as a Percent of Covered <u>Payroll</u> *
<b>Teachers' Retirement Plan</b>							
	10/1/2004	\$ 998,700	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
	10/1/2005	1,104,600	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
	10/1/2006	1,230,000	\$1,106,000	(\$124,000)	111.2%	\$322,300	(38.5)%
	10/1/2007	1,396,000	1,251,300	(144,700)	111.6	349,900	(41.4)
	10/1/2008	1,447,600	1,338,000	(109,600)	108.2	359,100	(30.5)
	10/1/2009	1,445,000	1,304,500	(140,500)	110.8	336,600	(41.7)
	10/1/2010	1,570,968	1,328,299	(242,669)	118.3	337,516	(71.9)
	10/1/2011	1,573,654	1,544,864	(28,790)	101.9	384,455	(7.5)
	10/1/2012	1,585,626	1,680,548	94,922	94.4	381,235	24.9
	10/1/2013	1,585,775	1,759,043	173,268	90.1	369,071	46.9
<b>Police Officers and Firefighters' Retirement Plan</b>							
	10/1/2004	\$1,645,400	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
	10/1/2005	1,933,600	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
	10/1/2006	2,252,600	\$2,459,000	\$206,400	91.6%	\$351,000	58.8%
	10/1/2007	2,672,900	2,647,300	(25,600)	101.0	371,300	(6.9)
	10/1/2008	2,932,100	2,938,800	6,700	99.8	421,800	1.6
	10/1/2009	3,048,400	3,027,900	(20,500)	100.7	436,100	(4.7)
	10/1/2010	3,418,796	3,166,830	(251,966)	108.0	423,854	(59.4)
	10/1/2011	3,593,716	3,309,825	(283,891)	108.6	421,221	(67.4)
	10/1/2012	3,804,853	3,456,976	(347,877)	110.1	414,877	(83.9)
	10/1/2013	4,013,534	3,644,085	(369,449)	110.1	413,380	(89.4)

Source: 2013 Valuation and the District of Columbia Retirement Board  
\* From 2003-2005 the District of Columbia Retirement Board used the aggregate actuarial cost method and was therefore not required to disclose a schedule of funding progress.

## Annual Required Contributions

Table 15 sets forth the ARC by the District for each of the Fiscal Years indicated. The ARC is determined annually based on the most recent actuarial valuation, although due to the timing of receipt of each valuation, there is a lag between the Fiscal Year results used to determine the ARC for any particular future Fiscal Year. As noted above, the 2013 Valuation was used to determine the ARC for Fiscal Year 2015. The valuation as of October 1, 2014, will be used to determine the ARC for Fiscal Year 2016.

**Table 15. Schedule of Employer Contributions**  
(\$000,000s)

<u>Year Ending</u>	<b>Teachers' Retirement Fund</b>		<b>Police Officers and Firefighters' Retirement Fund</b>		<b>Total Fund</b>	
	<u>Annual Required Contribution</u>	<u>Percentage Contributed</u>	<u>Annual Required Contribution</u>	<u>Percentage Contributed</u>	<u>Annual Required Contribution</u>	<u>Percentage Contributed</u>
September 30, 2013	\$6.4	100%	\$96.3	100%	\$102.7	100%
September 30, 2012	-	100	116.7	100	116.7	100
September 30, 2011	-	100	127.0	100	127.0	100
September 30, 2010	-	100	132.3	100	132.3	100
September 30, 2009	-	100	106.0	100	106.0	100
September 30, 2008	6.0	100	137.0	100	143.0	100
September 30, 2007	14.6	100	140.1	100	154.7	100
September 30, 2006	15.5	100	117.5	100	133.0	100
September 30, 2005	9.2	100	111.6	100	120.8	100
September 30, 2004	-	100	96.2	100	96.2	100

Source: 2013 DCRB CAFR

Future actuarial results and accordingly annual funding requirements may differ significantly from the results set forth herein and in the 2013 Valuation. These differences will be due to various factors, including, in part, as noted in the 2013 Valuation, plan experience may differ from that anticipated by the economic or demographic assumptions, changes in such assumptions and changes in plan provisions or applicable law. It is likely that actual future circumstances will vary from those assumed in the 2013 Valuation and such variances may be substantial.

### **Investments**

The 2013 DCRB CAFR includes a specific section labeled "Investment Section", which contains detailed information concerning the DCRB's investment objectives and policies, investment results, asset allocation, a report on investment activity, a list of the largest assets held, a schedule of fees and commissions and an investment summary. See pages 60-67 of the 2013 DCRB CAFR. Additional information regarding the DCRB's investment objectives and policies and investment reports is available at <http://dcrb.dc.gov/service/investments>.

### **Recent Changes to Pension Obligation Reporting**

In June 2012, the GASB issued GASB Statement No. 68, which set forth new standards that will modify the accounting and financial reporting of the District's pension obligations. The new standard for governments that provide employee pension benefits will require the District to report in its statement of net position a net pension liability, defined as the difference between the total pension liability (the present value of projected benefit payments to employees based on their past service) and the asset (mostly investments reported at fair value) set aside in a trust and restricted to paying benefits to current employees, retirees and their beneficiaries. The new standard will require immediate recognition of more pension expense than is currently required. The rate used to discount projected benefit payments to their present value will be based on a single rate that reflects (a) the long-term expected rate of return on plan investments as long as the plan net position is projected under specified conditions to be sufficient to pay pensions of current employees and retirees and the pension plan assets are expected to be invested using a

strategy to achieve that return and (b) a yield or index rate on tax-exempt 20-year AA-or-higher rated municipal bonds to the extent that the conditions for use of the long-term expected rate of return are not met. The new standard will be effective for the District's Fiscal Year 2015.

***Defined Contribution Pension Plan.*** Permanent full-time employees hired after September 30, 1987, are covered by the District's Defined Contribution Pension Plan. As of September 30, 2013 approximately 15,500 active permanent and full-time general employees were beneficiaries of payments made by the District on their behalf to the Defined Contribution Pension Plan. These employees also make payments to the U.S. Social Security System and are the beneficiaries of payments made by the District to that system on their behalf.

The District-sponsored Defined Contribution Pension Plan is an Internal Revenue Code Section 401(a) plan for permanent full-time and part-time employees who otherwise would have been covered by the Civil Service Retirement System but who were employed after September 30, 1987. The District contributed approximately \$44.2 million for Fiscal Year 2012 and \$48 million in Fiscal Year 2013. The current level of the District's defined contribution payment is 5% of base salary, except for detention officers, who receive 5.5% of base salary. Employees do not contribute to the plan and are eligible to participate after one year of service. Contributions and earnings vest fully after five years of creditable service. Vested contributions are not assets of the District and the District has no additional liability to this plan.

***403(b) and 457(b) Plans.*** The District also sponsors an annuity purchase plan under Internal Revenue Code Section 403(b) and a deferred compensation plan under Internal Revenue Code Section 457(b). Both plans are funded entirely from employee contributions. The assets of both plans are not assets of the District and the District has no financial liability to either plan.

### **Other Post-Employment Benefits**

Before 1987, all employees and retirees of the District government were eligible for coverage under federal health and insurance plans. In 1987, in response to a federal request, the Council enacted the District of Columbia Government Comprehensive Merit Personnel Act of 1978 Employee Benefits Amendment Act of 1987 (D.C. Law 7-27). This law requires the District government to provide health and life insurance benefits to retirees of the District first employed after September 30, 1987. Retirees of the District government first employed before October 1, 1987, remain eligible for federal health and life insurance benefits. A separate trust fund, the Annuitants' Health and Life Insurance Employer Contribution Trust Fund, was established to provide OPEB to retirees of the District first employed after September 30, 1987. Similar to most other jurisdictions, the District initially funded these programs on a pay-as-you-go basis, but began funding OPEB on an actuarial basis in Fiscal Year 2008. "Pay-as-you-go" is a method of financing a pension or other post-retirement benefit plan under which the contributions to the plan are generally made at about the same time and in about the same amount as benefit payments and expenses becoming due.

The District provides post-employment benefits to retirees. Based on years of service, the District pays up to a maximum of 75% of the cost of retiree health insurance, 30% of the cost of retiree life insurance and 60% of the cost of retiree spouse and dependent health insurance. The District pays 75% of the cost of the selected health benefit plan for covered family members of police officers or firefighter annuitants who are injured or killed in the line of duty. These benefits are available to all employees with five years of continuous service prior to retirement.

The most recent "roll-forward" valuation of the District's postretirement life and health plans was performed, as of September 30, 2013 and 2012. Thus, plan liabilities as of the 2013 valuation date were

computed based on projections of 2012 valuation results and the assumption that all of the actuarial assumptions used in the 2012 valuation were exactly realized. For the 2013 valuation of assets, actual asset amounts as of September 30, 2013 were used. The roll-forward valuation shows the funded ratio of the restricted trust established by the District to be 85.7%, as compared to 75.4% as of September 30, 2013. The actuarial accrued liability is estimated to be \$1,048.0 million, with an actuarial value of assets held in trust of \$897.8 million. This results in an unfunded actuarial liability of \$150.2 million as of September 30, 2013.

Since the District adopted GASB 45, which sets forth standards for the measurements, recognition and display of OPEB expenses/expenditures and related assets and liabilities and financial statement disclosures, the District established a restricted trust and began making annual payments to the trust. To date, the District has contributed 99% of the ARC for this purpose. The current investment return assumption is 7% and the unfunded liabilities are amortized over an open, 30 year period. The ARC to the trust for Fiscal Years 2012 and 2013 were \$95.5 million and \$85.2 million, respectively. For Fiscal Year 2013, the District budgeted and expended \$107.8 million for deposit into the trust. This amount had been established prior to release of the latest valuation. Based on its most recent valuation, the District currently projects future ARC to range from \$86.6 million in Fiscal Year 2014 to \$107.5 million in Fiscal Year 2018.

Actual contributions will likely be different in the future as funding requirements will be based upon various matters, including actuarial assumptions, investment returns, plan benefits and participant demographics. In addition, the most recent valuation also notes the uncertainty posed by certain provisions of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (“ACA”). One provision of the ACA imposes a 40% per year excise tax (the so-called “Cadillac tax”) on health coverage providers beginning in 2018 to the extent the value of employer sponsored health coverage exceeds certain amounts. The District cannot now predict whether or to what extent the Cadillac tax provision may adversely affect the costs to the District and its employees of providing health care coverage.

Additional information regarding the District’s OPEB plan and costs is set forth in Note 10 to the District’s CAFR for Fiscal Year 2013 and in the Required Supplemental Information thereto at page 131. The most recent actuarial valuation of the District’s postretirement life and health plans, as of September 30, 2013 and 2012, is incorporated herein by reference and can be found on the District’s website at: <http://cfo.dc.gov/page/reports-and-publications/>.

## **Indebtedness**

### ***Summary of Statutory Debt Provisions***

The Home Rule Act authorizes the issuance of short-term and long-term general obligation debt of the District. Short-term debt may be issued in the form of (i) revenue anticipation notes, in anticipation of the collection or receipt of revenues for a Fiscal Year or (ii) bond anticipation notes, in anticipation of the issuance of general obligation bonds.

The total amount of revenue anticipation notes outstanding at any time during a Fiscal Year may not exceed 20% of the total anticipated revenue of the District for such Fiscal Year and such notes must mature within the Fiscal Year in which they are issued. Not more than 15 days before the issuance of any revenue anticipation notes, the Mayor must certify the total anticipated revenue of the District for such Fiscal Year.

Bond anticipation notes must be paid no later than the last day of the third Fiscal Year following the Fiscal Year of issuance. The act of Council authorizing the notes must set forth an estimated

maximum annual debt service amount for the general obligation bonds in anticipation of which the notes are issued, and such debt service must be included in the 17% maximum debt service calculation described below.

The District also may issue long-term debt in the form of general obligation bonds and income tax secured bonds to finance capital projects and to refund indebtedness of the District. Any general obligation bond and income tax secured revenue bond issuances are not permitted during any Fiscal Year if total debt service in any Fiscal Year will exceed 17% of District revenues (as described in section 603(b) of the Home Rule Act, D.C. Official Code §1-206.03(b)(1) to which income tax secured bonds have been applied by District statute) during the Fiscal Year in which such issuances are made. General obligation bonds are secured by the full faith and credit of the District and may be secured additionally by a security interest in specified District revenues, including a special real property tax.

In 2009, the District passed the Limitation on Borrowing and Establishment of the Operating Cash Reserve Act of 2008, effective March 25, 2009, as amended (D.C. Law 17-360; D.C. Official Code §47-334 et seq.) (the “Debt Ceiling Act”) imposing a further limit on the issuance of any District general obligation bonds, Treasury capital-project loans, tax-supported revenue bonds, notes or other debt instruments secured by revenues derived from taxes, fees, or other general revenues of the District, or its agencies and authorities, pursuant to the District’s power to tax and impose fees, including TIF Bonds and PILOT Notes (as hereinafter defined), certificates of participation and lease purchase financing obligations (collectively, with the exceptions noted in the Debt Ceiling Act, “Tax-Supported Debt”), but excluding revenue bonds, notes, or other debt instruments issued for the purpose of funding water and sewer facilities, as described in section 490(a) of the Home Rule Act, and bonds, notes, or other debt instruments paid or secured by revenues from the Master Settlement Agreement with tobacco companies, federal grants, or revenues from the operation of public enterprises, so long as those enterprises are fully self-supporting, if such issuance would result in total debt service in the Fiscal Year of issuance, or any of the five succeeding Fiscal Years, on all outstanding Tax-Supported Debt exceeding 12% of annual District General Fund expenditures and transfers in any applicable Fiscal Year, as contained in the most recently enacted District budget (the “Debt Ceiling”).

Following the issuance of the Series 2014A Bonds, the District will have approximately \$9.0 billion of Tax-Supported Debt outstanding, the debt service on which will produce a Debt Ceiling percentage of approximately 10.6%, which will comply with the Debt Ceiling Act in Fiscal Year 2015.

All debt of the District must be authorized and issued pursuant to an act of Council and, in the case of general obligation bonds, the Council may require a voter referendum. The issuance of income tax secured revenue bonds or general obligation bonds for capital project purposes also is subject to prior approval by Council. Acts authorizing the issuance of general obligation revenue anticipation notes take effect on the date of enactment of such acts. Acts authorizing the issuance of any borrowings of the District, except those authorized as emergency legislation, acts authorizing the renewal or refunding of bond anticipation notes, and acts authorizing general obligation revenue anticipation notes, are subject, unless waived, to a 30-legislative day Congressional review period and possible disapproval by Congress and the President. To date, there has never been a voter referendum on the issuance of general obligation bonds.

### ***Long-Term Obligations***

***General Obligation Bonds.*** The District currently has approximately \$2.8 billion of general obligation bonds outstanding. With the exception of approximately \$255.8 million of variable-rate debt, all other general obligation bonds have been issued on a fixed-rate basis, synthetically converted to fixed-

rate obligations or otherwise hedged by a floating-to-fixed interest rate swap to hedge against interest rate fluctuations.

In October 2014, the District expects to issue approximately \$395 million of General Obligation Bonds, Series 2014C and approximately \$140 million of General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2014D (together, the “Series 2014 G.O. Fixed Rate Bonds”). The Series 2014 G.O. Fixed Rate Bonds will finance \$437 million of capital project expenditures remaining in the District’s Fiscal Year 2014 capital improvements plan and the balance will refund the \$155.8 million outstanding Series 2008A Bonds and Series 2008D Bonds currently held by Citibank, N.A., as further described below.

*General Obligation Direct Purchase Bond Program.* On October 25, 2012, the District converted its then outstanding Multimodal General Obligation Refunding Bonds (Variable Rate Demand Obligations), Series 2008A, Series 2008C and Series 2008D (collectively, the “Series 2008 Bonds”), substituting the direct-pay letters of credit related to such bonds with direct purchase obligations. The Series 2008A and Series 2008D Bonds were issued in a SIFMA Index mode and the Series 2008C Bonds in a LIBOR Index mode. The Series 2008 Bonds are issued under a Master Trust Indenture dated as of December 1, 2004, as supplemented and amended, by and between the District and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., as trustee.

On June 26, 2014, the District issued \$99.985 million of Multimodal General Obligation Bonds, Series 2014A and \$224.315 million of Multimodal General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2014B (together, the “Series 2014 G.O. Multimodal Bonds”). The Series 2014 G.O. Multimodal Bonds were sold on a direct purchase basis to Banc of America Preferred Funding Corporation, and a portion of the proceeds of the bonds financed \$100 million of capital project expenditures in the District’s Fiscal Year 2014 capital improvements plan. The balance of the Series 2014 G.O. Multimodal Bonds were used to refund the \$224.3 million Series 2008C Bonds previously held by Wells Fargo Bank, N.A. The Series 2014 G.O. Multimodal Bonds are issued under a Master Trust Indenture dated as of December 1, 2004, as supplemented and amended, by and between the District and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., as trustee. The chart below provides summary information with respect to such direct purchase obligations.

**Table 16. General Obligation Direct Purchase Bonds**  
as of August 1, 2014

Series	Par Outstanding	Final Maturity	Index	Reset Mode/ Payment Frequency	Direct Purchase Bank	Direct Purchase Agreement Date	Direct Purchase Expiration Date
2008A <sup>(a)</sup>	\$ 59,930,000	6/1/2034	SIFMA	7-Day Reset / Monthly Pay	Citibank, N.A.	10/25/2012	10/26/2015
2008D <sup>(a)</sup>	\$ 95,840,000	6/1/2034	SIFMA	7-Day Reset / Monthly Pay	Citibank, N.A.	10/25/2012	10/26/2015
2014A	\$ 99,985,000	6/1/2039	SIFMA	7-Day Reset / Monthly Pay	Banc of America Preferred Funding Corp.	6/26/2014	6/23/2017
2014B <sup>(b)</sup>	<u>\$224,315,000</u>	6/1/2027	LIBOR	Monthly Reset / Monthly Pay	Banc of America Preferred Funding Corp.	6/26/2014	6/23/2017
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$480,070,000</b>						

(a) The Series 2008A Bonds and Series 2008D Bonds will be current refunded from a portion of the proceeds of the Series 2014 G.O Fixed Rate Bonds.

(b) A portion of the proceeds of the Multimodal General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2014B refunded the Series 2008C-1 Bonds and Series 2008C-2 Bonds on June 26, 2014.

*Income Tax Secured Revenue Bonds.* The Income Tax Secured Bond Authorization Act of 2008 (D.C. Law 17-254; D.C. Official Code §§ 47-340.26-36), as amended (the “Income Tax Bond Act”) authorized the District to issue income tax secured revenue bonds (the “Income Tax Bonds”) to finance some or all of the capital projects in the District’s on-going capital improvements program. Income Tax Bonds are secured by a pledge of the revenues generated by the individual income tax and business

franchise taxes imposed by the District (the “Income Tax Revenues”), which are generally paid directly to and collected by a collection agent. After transfers in April, May and June of each year by the collection agent to the trustee for the Income Tax Bonds of amounts needed in the upcoming Fiscal Year to pay debt service on such bonds, all remaining income tax proceeds are released to the District. The holders of any Income Tax Bonds have a first lien on and a pledge of Income Tax Revenues superior to that of the holders of the tax revenue anticipation notes and general obligation bonds of the District. See “SECURITY AND SOURCES OF PAYMENT FOR THE BONDS” in Part 1.

The District has approximately \$4.3 billion of Income Tax Bonds outstanding, including \$258.3 million of variable-rate bonds.

*Other Long-Term Obligations.* In addition to the general obligation bonds and income tax secured revenue bonds, the District has payment obligations with respect to approximately (i) \$41.9 million of outstanding Certificates of Participation with a final maturity of 2023 issued to finance a portion of the cost of a public safety and emergency preparedness command center and telecommunications network (the “Series 2003 Certificates”) and (ii) \$152.5 million of outstanding Certificates of Participation with a final maturity of 2026, issued to finance a portion of the cost of designing, constructing and equipping a new psychiatric hospital facility on District-owned land on the campus of St. Elizabeths Hospital and to fund a portion of the cost of the acquisition and rehabilitation of a facility for the Department of Motor Vehicles (the “Series 2006 Certificates” and collectively, the “Certificates”). In each case, the Certificates are not debt of the District and the District’s payment obligations are subject to and dependent upon both inclusion of sufficient funds in annual District budgets and annual appropriations being made by the Council and the United States Congress for such purpose. The Certificates are, however, included in the calculation of the Debt Ceiling percentage. The Certificates are expected to be refunded from the proceeds of the Series 2014A Bonds.

For accounting and reporting purposes, the District’s CAFR for Fiscal Year 2013 treats the 20-year lease between the District and S/C 225 Virginia Avenue, LLC as a financing agreement, reports it as Other Loans Payable in the District’s long-term liabilities and includes it in the Debt Ceiling calculations.

The Mayor proposed and the Council approved bonds issued in 2007 (in the initial aggregate principal amount of \$34.1 million), 2010 (in the initial aggregate principal amount of \$53.2 million) and 2012 (in the initial aggregate principal amount of \$39.6 million) to finance a portion of the District’s New Communities Initiative, which is a large scale and comprehensive plan that provides housing infrastructure with a special focus on public housing, provides critical social support services, decreases the concentration of poverty and crime, enhances access to education and provides training and employment education to neighborhoods where crime, unemployment and truancy converge to create intractable physical and social conditions. Such bonds are revenue bonds secured by that portion of the District’s deed recordation tax and real property transfer tax revenues that is deposited into the District’s Housing Production Trust Fund, and are currently outstanding in the combined principal amount of approximately \$120.5 million. Based on a Council act, The Fiscal Year Budget Support Technical Clarification Amendment Act of 2014 (D.C. Law 20-117), beginning in Fiscal Year 2014, New Communities projects selected for financing with bond proceeds will no longer be funded from the Housing Production Trust Fund but will be funded with Income Tax Bonds.

In Fiscal Year 2011, the District issued \$82.6 million of GARVEE bonds to finance a portion of the East Washington Traffic Initiative (the 11th Street SE Bridge project). In Fiscal Year 2013, the District issued \$42.9 million of additional GARVEE bonds for the 11th Street SE Bridge project. The District currently has approximately \$111.1 million of GARVEE bonds outstanding. GARVEE bonds are secured by and payable solely from certain transportation grants received from, or anticipated to be received from, the federal government from moneys available in the Highway Transportation Fund. No

District funds are pledged to pay GARVEE bonds, and the Home Rule Act and the Debt Ceiling Act exclude GARVEE bonds from their respective debt limitation provisions, as discussed above.

In addition to the standard fixed-rate general obligation bonds and income tax secured revenue bonds, the District uses variable-rate bonds, synthetic fixed-rate bonds (through interest rate swaps), revenue bonds (including TIF Bonds and PILOT Notes (as hereinafter defined)) for special projects, certificates of participation and a master equipment lease/purchase program to diversify its debt portfolio, minimize debt service costs, and efficiently manage its capital assets and liabilities.

*Interest Rate Swap Agreements.* The District has used interest rate swaps as part of prudent fiscal management to lower its overall cost of borrowing. The District's swap agreements, subject to one exception relating to a floating-to-floating interest rate swap, were entered into in conjunction with the issuance of floating-rate general obligation bonds. At the time each such swap agreement was executed, the fixed rate paid by the District pursuant to the floating-to-fixed interest rate swap agreement was less than the fixed rate that would have been payable on fixed rate bonds. To manage its exposure to counterparty risk, the District entered into agreements only with counterparties that had a rating of at least "A." To manage its exposure to basis risk, the floating rate index selected at the time of execution of each agreement was that which, in the District's judgment, would approximate the rate on the related variable-rate bond series.

The District can elect to terminate a swap, but the counterparty does not have an option to terminate the transactions, and the counterparty is expected to perform through the transaction's maturity. The District or a counterparty may terminate a swap if the other party fails to perform under the terms of the contract. In addition, the Schedules to the International Swaps and Derivatives Association Master Agreement define an "additional termination event," which provides that the swap may be terminated if the counterparty, the counterparty's credit support provider, if any, or the District has triggered such event. The District is not required to post collateral support under the swap agreements, and in the event a termination payment is payable by the District, it is payable from the general funds of the District, subject to appropriation. See "Interest Rate Swaps – Summary Information" in the following table for specific termination trigger events.

The following table provides a brief description of the principal features of each interest rate swap agreement to which the District is a party. For a description of the underlying obligations to which the swap agreements described below relate, see Note 8 to the FY 2013 Financial Statements.

[Remainder of page intentionally left blank.]

**Table 17. Interest Rate Swaps - Summary Information<sup>(1)</sup>  
as of August 1, 2014**

1.	Related Bond Series	General Obligation Bonds Series 2001C, 2001D	General Obligation Bonds Series 2004B	Multimodal General Obligation Bonds Series 2014B <sup>(2)</sup>
2.	Initial Notional Amount	\$278,080,000	\$29,115,000	\$224,300,000
3.	Current Notional Amount	\$177,790,000	\$29,115,000	\$224,300,000
4.	Termination Date	June 1, 2029	Three portions terminating with associated bond maturities on June 1, 2015, 2016 and 2020	June 1, 2027
5.	Type of Swap	Floating-to-Floating	Floating-to-Fixed	Floating-to-Fixed
6.	Rate Paid by Counterparty	60 to 90% of LIBOR, based on LIBOR rate on reset date	Varies, from 1.60% to 1.81% plus CPI-U rate	To 12/1/04, BMA* Index; 12/1/04 to Termination Date, 67% of LIBOR
7.	Rate Paid by District	67% of LIBOR	Varies, from 4.701% to 5.121%	3.615%
8.	Counterparty	JP Morgan Chase Bank, N.A.	JP Morgan Chase Bank, N.A.	Morgan Stanley Capital Services Inc.
9.	Counterparty Rating (S&P/Moody's/Fitch)	A+/Aa3/A+	A/A3/A+	A-/Baa2/A
10.	Collateral/Credit Support	None	Assured Guaranty Ltd., insurance for swap payments by District; Guarantee of counterparty by parent	None
11.	Priority of Payments			
	a. interest payments	General obligation of the District	General obligation of the District	General obligation of the District
	b. termination payments	General funds of the District, subject to appropriation	General funds of the District, subject to appropriation	General funds of the District, subject to appropriation
12.	Additional Termination Events	Senior unsecured debt rating falls below BBB- or Baa3	Senior unsecured debt rating falls below BBB- or Baa3	Senior unsecured debt rating falls below BBB- or Baa3

\* Following the merger of the Securities Industry Association and the Bond Market Association ("BMA"), the BMA is now the Securities Industry and Financial Markets Association ("SIFMA").

- (1) **AWC Agreement.** In addition to the swaps summarized in this table, in connection with the issuance of the Anacostia Waterfront Corporation (AWC) PILOT Revenue Bonds issued in September 2007 (the "AWC Bonds"), AWC entered into a floating-to-fixed interest rate swap with Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., formerly Wachovia Bank, N.A., under which AWC pays a fixed rate and receives a variable rate that matches the rate on the AWC Bonds. The notional amount of such agreement is equal to the principal amount of the AWC Bonds. Since the issuance of such AWC Bonds, the District has, pursuant to statute, abolished AWC and assumed its assets and obligations, including the payment of the AWC Bonds, but only from the specific revenue streams pledged as security for such bonds.
- (2) **The Series 2014B Bonds.** The Series 2014B Bonds were issued to refund the District's Series 2008C Bonds, which were issued to refund the District's Series 2002B Bonds. The swap agreement entered into by the District in connection with the Series 2002B Bonds (the "2002 Swap") was, for federal tax purposes, identified on the District's books with the Series 2002B Bonds. The issuance of the Series 2008C Bonds resulted in the deemed (hypothetical) termination of the 2002 Swap for federal tax purposes, at which time it was identified with the Series 2008C Bonds on the District's books. In 2012, upon reissuance (solely for federal tax purposes) of the Series 2008C Bonds in connection with the conversion of the applicable interest rate mode on the Series 2008C Bonds, the 2002 Swap was, again, deemed terminated for federal tax purposes, but was not then identified, for federal tax purposes, with the Series 2008C Bonds on the District's books. While the 2002 Swap was deemed terminated for federal tax purposes in connection with the interest rate conversion of the Series 2008C Bonds, the 2002 Swap has not actually been terminated by the District and remains in effect and associated with the Series 2014B Bonds for accounting purposes of the District.

*Economic Development Initiatives of the District.* The District finances a portion of the costs of certain privately owned, economic development projects and public infrastructure projects through the issuance of tax increment bonds or notes (“TIF Bonds”) and Payment In Lieu of Taxes revenue bonds and notes (“PILOT Notes”). TIF Bonds generally are payable from incremental increases in certain dedicated real property and sales tax revenues generated from the respective project TIF Areas. Some TIF Bonds and PILOT Notes are additionally secured by the Downtown TIF Area. The Downtown TIF Area is located substantially in the northwest quadrant of the District of Columbia and covers a substantial portion of the downtown area of the District of Columbia (the “Downtown TIF Area”). TIF Bonds and PILOT Notes are not general obligation debt of the District, and do not involve a pledge of the full faith and credit of the District.

Table 18 below lists all outstanding TIF Bonds and PILOT Notes of the District, those that were issued and subsequently repaid, as well as additional debt that has been authorized but remains unissued.

[Remainder of page intentionally left blank.]

**Table 18. TIF Bonds and PILOT Notes**

<b>Project Name</b>	<b>Initial Issuance Amount</b>	<b>Amount Outstanding as of June 2, 2014<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Authorization Remaining</b>
<i>Authorized Under the Tax Increment Financing Authorization Act of 1998 (as amended)</i>			
Capitol Hill Towers TIF	\$ 10,000,000	\$ 0	\$ 0
Embassy Suites Hotel TIF	11,000,000	0	0
Gallery Place TIF	73,650,000	50,455,000	0
International Spy Museum TIF	6,900,000	0	0
Mandarin Oriental Hotel TIF	45,995,387	19,677,371	0
NCRC Revenue Bonds (DC USA Parking Garage Project)	46,900,000	0	0
Shakespeare Theatre TIF Note	10,000,000	0	0
Waterfront Arts Project TIF Note	10,000,000	12,305,747 <sup>(1)</sup>	0
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>\$ 214,445,387</b>	<b>\$ 82,438,118</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>
<i>Authorized Under the Retail Incentive Act of 2004 (as amended)</i>			
Downtown Retail Priority Area TIF Notes	18,473,326	9,694,757	0
Fort Lincoln Retail Priority Area TIF Note	10,000,000	6,079,565	0
Great Streets Retail Priority Area TIF Notes	5,934,731	5,645,437	0
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>\$ 34,408,057</b>	<b>\$ 21,419,759</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>
<i>Authorized Under the Payment In Lieu of Taxes Act of 2004 (as amended)</i>			
Anacostia Waterfront Corporation PILOT Revenue Bonds	111,550,000	73,700,000	0
Capper/Carrollsborg PILOT Revenue Bond Anticipation Notes	29,000,000	0	0
Rhode Island PILOT Note	7,200,000	6,152,285	0
Southeast Federal Center PILOT Note	5,660,000	5,440,083	84,340,000 <sup>(2)</sup>
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>\$ 153,410,000</b>	<b>\$ 85,292,368</b>	<b>\$ 84,340,000</b>
<i>Authorized Under Other Acts</i>			
Convention Center Hotel TIF/Revenue Bonds	176,380,000	176,380,000	0
O Street Market TIF	38,650,000	38,650,000	\$3,000,000
Verizon Center Sales Tax Revenue Notes	50,000,000	49,925,000	0
Southwest Waterfront TIF/PILOT	0	0	198,000,000
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>\$ 265,030,000</b>	<b>\$ 264,955,000</b>	<b>\$ 201,000,000</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>\$ 667,293,444</b>	<b>\$ 454,105,245</b>	<b>\$ 285,340,000</b>

(1) Includes accrued interest.

(2) A Southeast Federal Center PILOT Note in the principal amount of approximately \$29.1 million is expected to be issued in the fourth quarter of Fiscal Year 2014.

*Ballpark Financing.* The Ballpark Omnibus Financing and Revenue Act of 2004 (the “Ballpark Financing Act”) provided public financing for (i) the construction of a baseball stadium in the District (the “Ballpark”), to be owned by the District and leased (the “Stadium Lease”) to the owners of the Washington Nationals, and (ii) the renovation of Robert F. Kennedy Memorial Stadium (“RFK”) (collectively, the “Ballpark Project”). The Ballpark Financing Act provided for the creation of a Ballpark Revenue Fund (the “Ballpark Revenue Fund”) within the General Fund, into which all receipts are deposited from the following (collectively, “Ballpark Revenues”): (i) taxes on ticket sales, parking and concessions of food, beverages and merchandise at the Ballpark and RFK (during baseball games) (the “Ballpark Sales Tax”), (ii) a gross receipts tax on certain businesses within the District in accordance with the schedule described in footnote 14 to Table 5 (the “Ballpark Fee”), (iii) the Ballpark Utilities Tax (described below), and (iv) rent payments under the Stadium Lease.

The Ballpark Revenue Fund is pledged as the source of payment for the District's Ballpark Revenue Bonds, which were issued in the amount of \$534.8 million in May 2006, to fund the Ballpark Project. The Ballpark Revenue Bonds were originally issued as Taxable Series 2006A-1, Taxable Series 2006A-2, Series 2006B-1 and Series 2006B-2 (Auction Rate Certificates) (collectively, the "Ballpark Bonds"). In May 2008, the Series 2006B-2 Bonds were converted to variable-rate demand obligations with credit enhancement in the form of a direct-pay letter of credit provided by Bank of America, N.A. In July 2011, a portion of the Series 2006B-2 Bonds, totaling approximately \$22.7 million, was privately placed with PNC Bank, N.A. at a variable rate of interest for a term of three years. In July 2014, the District repaid in full the \$21 million of outstanding Series 2006B-2 Bonds from excess pledged revenues.

The District collects a tax of 11% of the gross receipts from sales to non-residential customers by companies selling natural gas, landline telephone service, toll telecommunications service, mobile telecommunications service, heating oil and artificial gas. The "Ballpark Utilities Tax" is equal to: (i) one-eleventh of the aforementioned 11% gross receipts tax, and (ii) a tax of \$0.0007 per kilowatt-hour of electricity delivered to non-residential end-users in the District of Columbia.

### ***Other Capital Funding***

*Master Equipment Lease/Purchase Program.* The District began a Master Equipment Lease/Purchase Program (the "Program") in 1998 to provide tax-exempt financing for projects with short-term to intermediate-term useful lives. As a result, rolling stock such as police, emergency, and public works vehicles has been acquired on a relatively short-term lease/purchase basis rather than with the proceeds of long-term bonds. This Program has enabled the District to improve its asset/liability management by matching the useful life of the asset being financed to the amortization of the liability (5 to 10 years).

As of August 2, 2014, the District had financed approximately \$487 million of its capital equipment needs through the Program since its inception, and there was approximately \$100 million in principal outstanding. Lease payment obligations are payable subject to appropriation, and are neither debt nor general obligations of the District; such obligations, however, are subject to the Debt Ceiling.

*Underground Electric Power Lines.* The District expects to participate in the financing of undergrounding electric power lines located in the District of Columbia. The electric power line undergrounding bonds are authorized to be issued in a par amount not to exceed \$375 million. The electric power line undergrounding bonds will not be paid from District funds, but, instead, from revenues generated from a nonbypassable electric surcharge (the "Charge") billed to and collected from electric customers by the public utility (currently Pepco Holdings Inc. ("Pepco")), as servicing agent to the District. The Charge must be approved by the District's Public Service Commission prior to billing and collection. As such, the obligations arising from this financing are not the District's debt and will not be subject to the Debt Ceiling. On April 30, 2014, the Chicago-based Exelon Corporation ("Exelon") announced its preliminary agreement to purchase Pepco. The acquisition is expected to close by the third quarter of 2015. There is no indication from Pepco or Exelon that the transaction will impact the undergrounding project.

### ***Short-Term Obligations***

The District from time to time issues short-term tax revenue anticipation notes, which must be repaid by the end of the Fiscal Year in which they are issued, in order to finance its seasonal cash flow needs. The District issued tax revenue anticipation notes in Fiscal Years 2010-2014, as shown below. All tax revenue anticipation notes issued in Fiscal Years 2010-2013 were repaid at the end of each

respective Fiscal Year. The District expects to repay the tax revenue anticipation notes issued in Fiscal Year 2014 by the end of September 2014.

**Table 19. General Obligation Tax Revenue Anticipation Notes**  
Fiscal Years 2010-2014 (\$ in millions)

	<u>2010</u>	<u>2011</u>	<u>2012</u>	<u>2013</u>	<u>2014</u>
Total Notes Issued	\$500	\$700	\$820	\$675	\$405
Total Notes Issued as a Percentage of General Fund Revenues <sup>(1)</sup>	8.83%	11.68%	12.45%	9.85%	6.39%

(1) The total amount of tax revenue anticipation notes outstanding at any time during a Fiscal Year may not exceed 20% of the total anticipated tax revenue of the District for such Fiscal Year. Such notes must mature within the Fiscal Year in which they are issued.

Sources: Exhibit A-2 General Fund Schedule of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balance, District's CAFRs for Fiscal Years 2010-2013. The percentage for Fiscal Year 2014 is based on the District's September 2013 Revenue Estimate.

The following table shows the District's Tax-Supported Debt per capita for Fiscal Years 2009-2013.

**Table 20. Tax-Supported Debt Per Capita**  
Fiscal Years 2009 – 2013

<u>Fiscal Year</u>	<u>Tax-Supported Debt <sup>(1)</sup></u>	<u>Tax-Supported Debt Per Capita <sup>(2)</sup></u>
2009	\$6,414,393,000	\$10,019
2010	6,955,944,000	10,727
2011	7,624,392,000	11,364
2012	7,831,218,000	11,467
2013	8,393,885,000	12,985

(1) Note: the debt calculation stated in the table is different from and does not necessarily reflect the tax-supported debt for Debt Ceiling purposes.

(2) The prior per capita amounts have been updated to reflect revised census population estimates.

Sources: District's CAFR for Fiscal Year 2013; Statistical Section; Convention Center debt was obtained from the District's Notes to Financial Statements from CAFRs for prior Fiscal Years.

## THE DISTRICT'S ECONOMIC RESOURCES

Although the District of Columbia is primarily known as the Nation's Capital, it is also an international city, a cultural center and the central city of the seventh largest metropolitan area in the United States. The District of Columbia covers approximately 61 square miles and had a resident population of 646,449 as of July 1, 2013 according to the U.S. Census Bureau estimates. The Washington primary metropolitan statistical area (the "PMSA") encompasses 20 jurisdictions in Maryland, Virginia and West Virginia, as well as the District.

As the Nation's Capital, the District of Columbia is the seat of the three branches of the federal government and headquarters for most federal departments and agencies. In addition, the District is host to 206 foreign embassies and other recognized diplomatic missions. A number of international organizations, such as the International Monetary Fund, the World Bank, the World Health Organization and the Organization of American States, have their headquarters in the District.

In 2012, approximately 16.8 million domestic visitors and 1.7 million international visitors traveled to the District. The District was the eighth most visited destination in the U.S. for international travelers in 2012. Visitors are attracted not only by the need to do business with the federal government and regional businesses but also by the national monuments, 350 historic sites, more than 50 museums and other major cultural attractions. The John F. Kennedy Center for the Performing Arts, the National Gallery of Art, the Smithsonian Institution and the Library of Congress are among the cultural institutions of international renown located in the District of Columbia. In 2012, total visitor spending in the District of Columbia was approximately \$6.2 billion.

The Washington, D.C. area has developed into a diverse economic region with federal government employment providing a base for significant expansions in services, aerospace, high technology and communications, and as a site for corporate headquarters. The District of Columbia is served by three airports (Ronald Reagan Washington National Airport, primarily for domestic flights, and Washington Dulles International Airport and Baltimore-Washington Thurgood Marshall International Airport for domestic and international flights), as well as passenger and freight rail networks and passenger buses.

### *Population*

The U.S. Census Bureau estimated that the District of Columbia's population was 646,449 on July 1, 2013, which is an increase of 81,219 or 14.4%, as compared to July 1, 1998. The population growth as of July 1, 2013 was the fifth consecutive year in which annual population growth exceeded 2%, with an average annual gain of 13,243, during this period.

From 2010 to 2013, the District of Columbia experienced a higher rate of population growth than 49 of the 50 states. The rate, 6.8%, was higher than all but North Dakota, at 7.3%, and also higher than the average rate for the United States, at 2.2%.

Per capita personal income in the District of Columbia has been consistently higher than all of the 50 states. In 2013, per capita personal income in the District of Columbia was \$74,513, compared to \$44,543 for the United States as a whole, based on estimates by the U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis. Based upon data collected by the U.S. Census Bureau from 2008 through 2012, median household income over that period for District of Columbia residents was \$64,267, compared to \$53,046 nationwide. The high per capita and household incomes in the District result from a combination of factors, including multiple-earner households, small household size (average of 2.17 persons based upon data collected by the U.S. Census Bureau from 2011), and a large percentage of college graduates employed in highly-

skilled occupations. The District of Columbia has a significant number of lower-income residents, with an average of 18.5% of the population below the poverty line in 2012. Based upon data collected by the U.S. Census Bureau from 2008 through 2012, an average of 87.5% of District of Columbia residents age 25 or older are high school graduates, compared to 85.7% nationwide; 51.2% of District of Columbia residents in the same age group had earned a bachelor's degree (or higher), compared to 25.4% nationwide.

**Table 21. Demographic Statistics**

<u>Year</u>	<u>Population</u>	<u>Median Age (Years)</u>	<u>Per Capita Personal Income</u>		
	<u>D.C.</u>	<u>D.C.</u>	<u>D.C.</u>	<u>U.S.</u>	<u>Ratio of D.C. to U.S.</u>
2009	592,228	34.0	\$68,008	\$39,357	172.7%
2010	604,989	33.8	\$69,769	\$40,163	173.7%
2011	619,020	33.7	\$74,480	\$42,298	176.0%
2012	632,323	33.6	\$74,773	\$43,735	170.9%
2013	646,449	N/A	\$74,513	\$44,543	167.3%

Sources: U.S. Department of Commerce, U.S. Census Bureau; U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis.

**Table 22. Sources of Income of District Residents<sup>(1)</sup>**

<u>Source of Income</u>	<u>2009</u>	<u>2010</u>	<u>2011</u>	<u>2012</u>	<u>2013</u>
Net earnings	72.3%	72.4%	71.8%	71.9%	71.4%
Dividends, interest, and rents	15.9%	14.9%	15.8%	16.1%	16.4%
Transfer payments <sup>(2)</sup>	11.8%	12.7%	12.4%	12.0%	12.2%

(1) Each of the years listed in Table 22 is a calendar year.

(2) Transfer payments consist largely of government benefits received by individuals, including retirement and disability insurance benefits (e.g., workers' compensation), medical benefits (e.g., Medicare), income maintenance benefits (e.g., Supplemental Security Income benefits, family assistance payments and food stamps) and unemployment insurance compensation.

Source: U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis.

### ***Employment and Industry***

*Employment.* The following statistics are based on estimates by the U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics and are not seasonally adjusted. In January 2014, total resident employment in the PMSA was approximately 3,208,500, and total resident employment in the District of Columbia was approximately 367,400, which is 11.45% of the PMSA total.

The District's large service sector accounted for 726,700 jobs located in the District of Columbia as of January 2014. Public sector employment in the District of Columbia, which stabilized District employment during the U.S. economic recession that began in December 2007, decreased to an annual average of 239,700 jobs in 2013. As of January 2014, public sector employment in the District of Columbia had decreased to 235,500 jobs.

*Tourism.* The convention and tourism industry that services the business traveler, conventioner and tourist is one of the District's core industries and is a major source of jobs and sales tax revenue.

The Convention Center opened in 2003 with the goal of increasing the District's desirability as a destination for business meetings and conventions. The Convention Center is approximately three times as large as the former convention center with approximately 2.3 million total square feet, including 725,000 square feet of exhibit space, 210,000 square feet for meeting space divisible into 66 rooms, and

44,000 square feet for retail space and street-level restaurants. The meeting space includes a 52,000 square foot ballroom which is one of the largest on the East Coast.

In October 2010, the WCSA issued approximately \$250 million in bonds to assist with the financing of the Washington Convention Center headquarters hotel development, adjacent to the convention center, which includes the acquisition, development, construction and equipping of a hotel with approximately 1,170 rooms and suites, together with ancillary facilities customarily found in convention center hotels.

*Universities.* Several colleges and universities are located in the District of Columbia, including Georgetown University, The George Washington University, Howard University, The Catholic University of America, Gallaudet University, American University and the University of the District of Columbia. Other major universities in the PMSA include George Mason University and the University of Maryland.

*Real Estate.* Single-family home sales in the District of Columbia during Fiscal Year 2013 were 17.6% higher than the year before, with an average price of 13.1% higher than the year before. Single family home sales totaled 7,466 while the average single family sales increased to \$712,000. The 2013 year-end commercial office space vacancy rate in the District of Columbia was 9.3% (including sublet space), well below the comparable rate of 15.3% for the surrounding metropolitan area. The direct vacancy rate was 8.7% at year-end 2013, unchanged from 2012. Occupied commercial office space in the District of Columbia for the year-end 2013 was 124 million square feet and there were 5 million square feet of new office buildings under construction.

**Table 23. Top 10 Private Sector Employers in the District<sup>(1)(2)</sup>**  
(2013)

<b>Employer</b>	<b>Rank<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Georgetown University	1
George Washington University	2
Washington Hospital Center	3
Children's National Medical Center	4
American University	5
Howard University	6
Georgetown University Hospital	7
Booz Allen & Hamilton Inc.	8
Fannie Mae	9
Catholic University of America	10

<sup>(1)</sup> This data is produced through the Quarterly Covered Employment and Wage Program, a Bureau of Labor Statistics federal/state cooperative statistical program. Release of data under this program is subject to the Confidential Information Protection and Statistical Efficiency Act of 2002. The District cannot release company specific employment information without the written consent of each of the companies that are included in the release of such data. As a result, only rank information for the top ten principal employers is presented.

<sup>(2)</sup> Table 23 does not include the federal and local government as employers. With the exception of Booz Allen & Hamilton Inc. and Fannie Mae, all of the employers listed above are not-for-profit entities.

<sup>(3)</sup> Ranked by size of workforce.

Source: District's CAFR for Fiscal Year 2013; Statistical Section, Exhibit S-4B.

**Table 24. Employment and Unemployment in the Civilian Labor Force  
Washington, D.C., Washington PMSA and the United States**  
(Annual Average Data; Not Seasonally Adjusted)

**Washington, D.C.**

	<u>2009</u>	<u>2010</u>	<u>2011</u>	<u>2012</u>	<u>2013</u>
Labor Force	335,137	346,126	349,763	364,488	370,482
Number Employed	302,781	311,263	314,216	331,470	339,708
Number Unemployed	32,356	34,863	35,547	33,018	30,774
Unemployment Rate	9.7%	10.1%	10.2%	9.1%	8.3%

Source: U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics

**Washington, PMSA**

	<u>2009</u>	<u>2010</u>	<u>2011</u>	<u>2012</u>	<u>2013</u>
Labor Force	3,054,881	3,097,489	3,146,870	3,182,005	3,213,997
Number Employed	2,865,431	2,898,823	2,958,470	3,005,066	3,039,182
Number Unemployed	189,450	198,667	188,400	176,940	174,815
Unemployment Rate	6.2%	6.4%	6.0%	5.6%	5.4%

Source: U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics

**United States**  
(000s)

	<u>2009</u>	<u>2010</u>	<u>2011</u>	<u>2012</u>	<u>2013</u>
Labor Force	154,142	153,889	153,617	154,975	155,389
Number Employed	139,877	139,064	139,869	142,469	143,929
Number Unemployed	14,265	14,825	13,747	12,506	11,460
Unemployment Rate	9.3%	9.6%	8.9%	8.1%	7.4%

Source: U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics



